



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

الصف السادس الإبتدائي

PRIMARY SIX

الفصل الدراسي الأول

2024

6th

FIRST TERM

دار غـزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents









Punctuation

علامات الترقيم



Capital Letters
الحروف الكبيرة
A - B - C

1. بداية الجملة
خبرية - استفهامية - أمرية

2. الألقاب
Mr - Miss - Mrs
الاختصارات
Dr - CD - TV

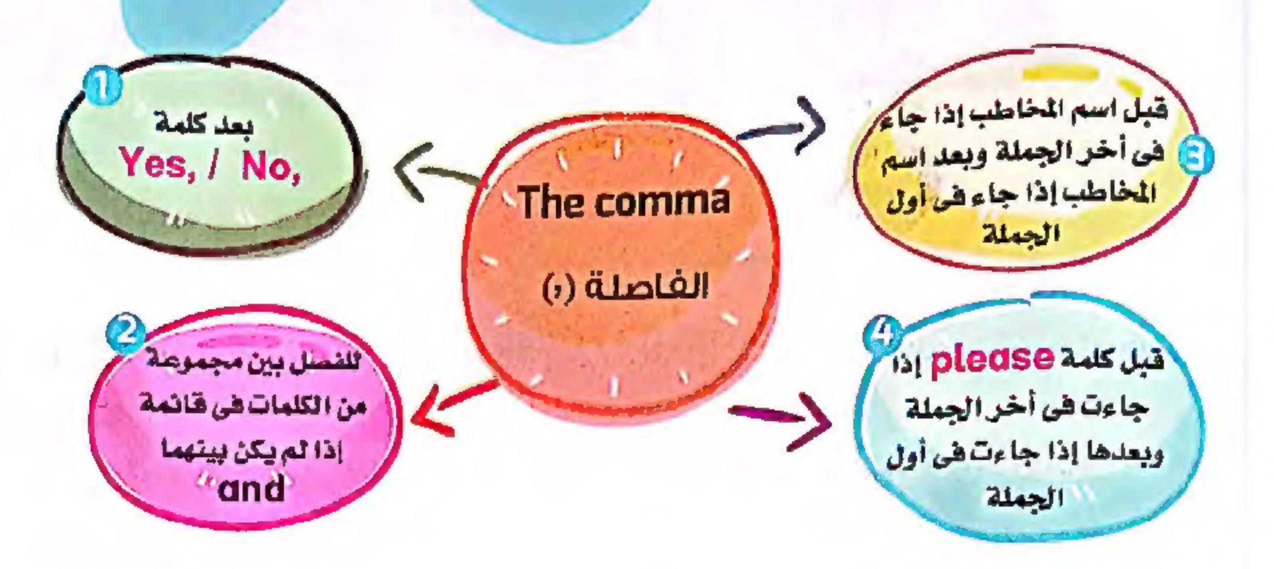
3. I أنا
الضمير I فى أى مكان فى الجملة capital

4. أسماء البلاد والمدن
Cairo - Alexandria
أسماء الشهور
May - April
الجنسيات
Egyptian

5. أسماء الأشخاص
Yasser - Noha
أيام الأسبوع
Tuesday - Friday

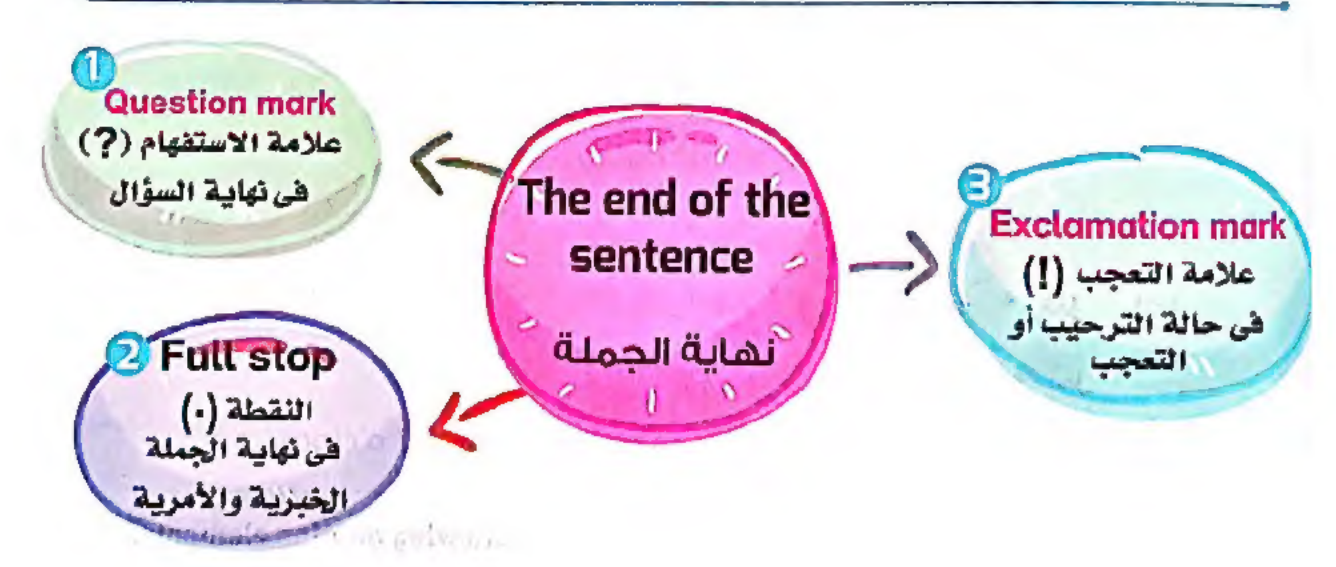
Examples:

1. **S**ameh is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your house? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير I)
5. We visited **C**airo in **M**arch. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**r Tamer plays tennis on **W**ednesday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want fruit, fish and rice. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Come here, Eman. / Eman, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. How are you, Karim? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Nabil. (علامة تعجب)

Writing Skills



How to write a paragraph
كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٥٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

- حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

① فاعل			② فعل		③ تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف مكان - زمان / صفة / حال
Amged	Garden	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	He is excited.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Gamal is a doctor.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	She went to the party.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are ready on Sunday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I help her.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	We get up at 7 o'clock.

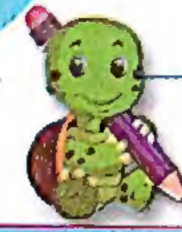
1 **Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Your birthday party

Guiding questions
1- When's your birthday?
2- Where's your birthday?

Yesterday was my birthday. I made a big party at my garden. I have a nice garden around my house. My mother prepared some sandwiches. My father bought a chocolate cake. I liked it very much. My friends came to the party. We sang songs and danced. We played video games and football. It was a nice day.



How to write an email
كيف تكتب إيميل

To: البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

From: البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالراسل:

Subject: موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية كإننا بنكتب براجراف عادى ------------------------

----

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكترونى بشكل منظم:

١- فى السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكترونى أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه،

٢- فى السطر الثانى ابدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you."

"Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:

"How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للإيميل ولماذا كتبته:

I want to tell you about ---------------------------------------

٥- يجب أن يحتوى بريدك الإلكترونى على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكترونى بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو "See you soon."

أو "By for you now." أو "Hope to hear from you soon."

لاحظ بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكترونى:

١- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة him أو her أو them قم بتحويلها فى الإيميل إلى كلمة you.

٢- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة your نحولها إلى كلمة my.

٣- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة you نحولها إلى كلمة I.

• يأتى السؤال كالتالى:

Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

beaches - amazing

To your friend Hany to tell him about your trip to Alexandria. Your name is Emad and your email address is emad17@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hany33@gmail.com.

New Message

To	(1) ايميل المرسل اليه ...	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	(2) ايميل الراسل ...	
Subject	(3) موضوع الرسالة ...	

(4) **Dear / Hi** اسم المرسل اليه **(Hany),**

جملة افتتاحية (5) → --

موضوع الايميل (6) → --

جملة ختامية (7) → --

تحية الخاتمة (8) **Yours / Love**
اسم الراسل **(Emad)**

Send

لاحظ

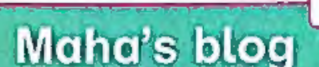
إذا لم يكن بالسؤال عنوان البريد الاليكترونى الخاص بك وبصديقك اكتب اسم صديقك فى :To واسمك فى :From



How to write a blog
كيف تكتب تدوينة

1 Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:

١- تاريخ اليوم



BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

٢- عنوان الموضوع

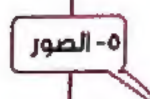
Tuesday, 5th August

My new school

٣- مقدمة افتتاحية

Dear Diary,
It was a nice day today. I went to a new school near my apartment.
My father had a new job in the Sixth of October City so, we moved to a new apartment. At first I was sad because I left my friends. My new school was bigger than my old school. I made new friends. They welcomed me and showed me my classroom. The teachers were kind and nice. I think that it's a special school. 🙂

٤- رموز تعبيرية

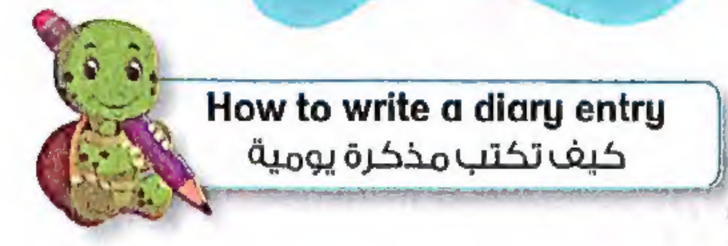




- خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

١- قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
٢- ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذى سنتحدث عنه.
٣- ابدأ اليومية بكتابة "Dear Diary".
٤- قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التى مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
٥- قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
٦- يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" أو "my".
٧- قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
٨- أعط رأيك فى الموضوع الذى تتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل:
"I think that ...." أو "In my opinion................"





- خطوات كتابة المذكرة اليومية

- A diary has features that are different from other types of text:

- تحتوي المذكرة اليومية على سمات تختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص:

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.

- إنها عادة تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة ، كل واحدة تدور حول ما حدث في يوم واحد.

- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.).

- تكتب عادةً بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر الشخص الأول (المتكلم) (أنا ، نحن، ملكي ، إلخ).

- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

- تصف عادةً أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.

- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

- تصف عادةً الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

مثال لمذكرة يومية:

Dear Diary,

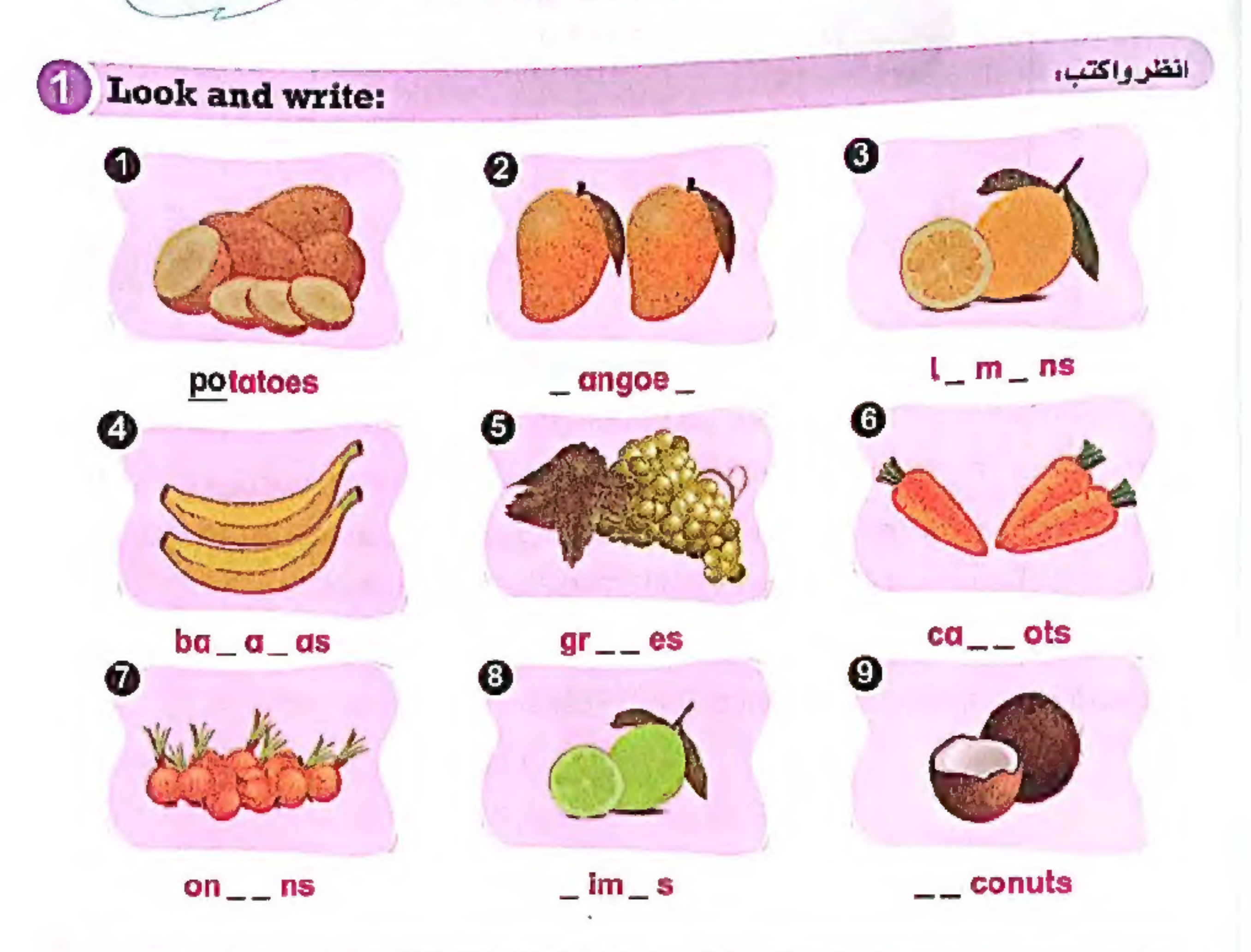
Today while I was cleaning my cupboard, I found some old pictures of me and my sisters. We were laughing a lot in this picture. I believe that it should be some really funny moment. Another funny picture, when I was hiding and eating chocolate from my father's pocket so that I don't have to share with anyone.

A picture of us was also there. It was on my sister's birthday. Some pictures made me laugh and some made me cry.

Gameela

Let's remember!

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:



2 Write the words from Exercise 1 in the correct group. Then listen, check and say:

اكتب الكلمات من التمرين (١) فى المجموعة الصحيحة. ثم استمع وتأكد وقل:

Fruit	Vegetables
bananas	carrots

3 Find and circle seven more words for sports:

أوجد وضع دائرة حول سبع كلمات إضافية تعبر عن الرياضة :

k	a	r	a	t	e	y	u	i	o	p	l	k
u	f	d	s	a	s	w	i	m	m	i	n	g
n	o	i	u	y	q	t	r	e	w	q	m	n
g	s	d	f	g	u	h	j	k	l	b	v	s
f	o	o	t	b	a	l	l	x	c	z	n	a
u	f	j	e	r	s	x	m	t	r	s	w	i
j	o	r	n	t	h	a	n	d	b	a	l	l
y	p	h	n	b	d	f	t	y	o	d	p	i
e	r	t	i	y	u	i	o	p	k	e	j	n
s	a	z	s	x	c	v	b	n	m	i	a	g

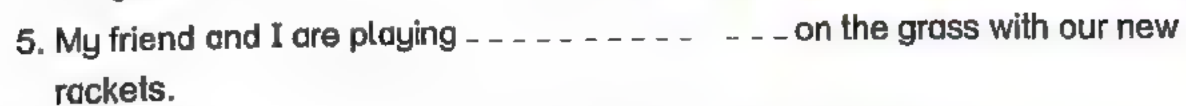
4 Complete the sentences. Use the sports from Exercise 3:

أكمل الجمل، استخدم الرياضات من التمرين (٣) :

1. My brother is on the _football_ team. They have a match next week.
2. I think ___________ is difficult. You can't kick the ball with your feet!
3. My sister is good at ___________ She goes to the pool every Friday.



4. I'm good at ___________ I have a black belt.

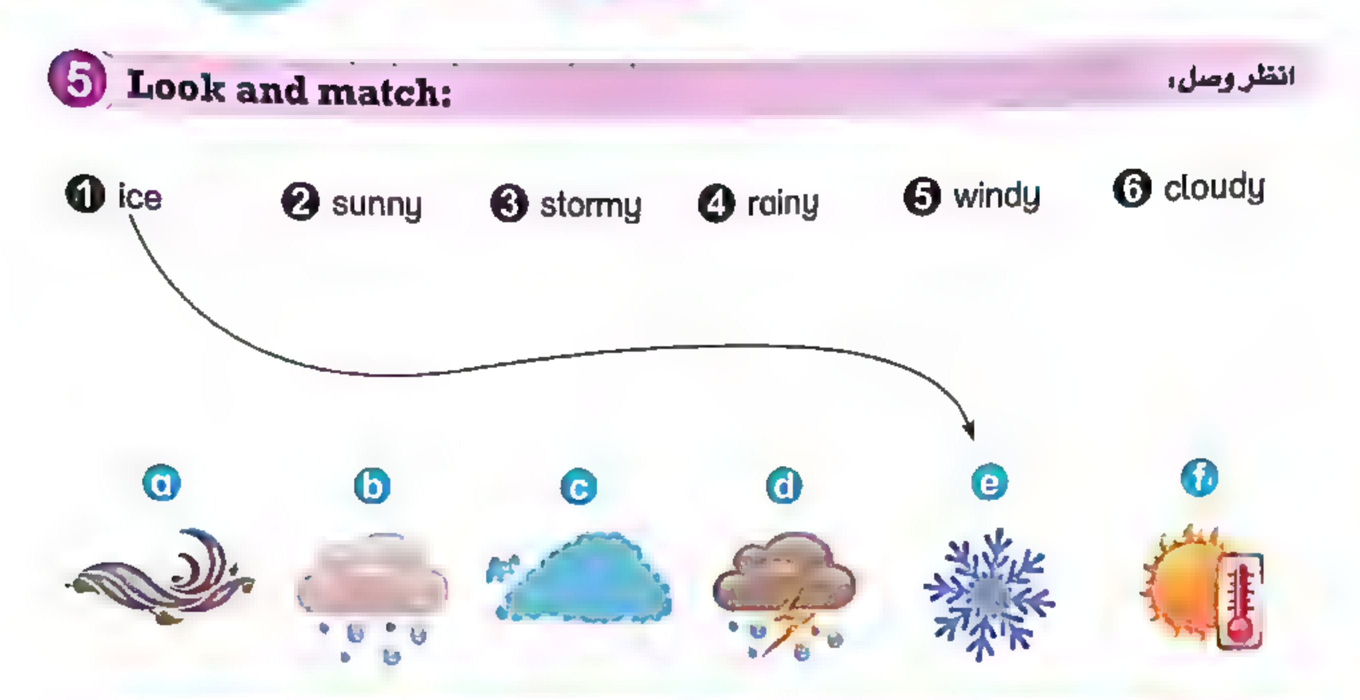


5. My friend and I are playing ___________ on the grass with our new rackets.
6. We love ___________ We take our boat on the river.
7. I'm not very good at ___________ I can't hit the ball hard enough against the wall!
8. I can't always tell the difference between karate and ___________ but I like both sports!



5 Look and match:

انظر وصل،



6 Look and write about the weather in each city:

انظر واكتب عن الطقس فى كل مدينة،

City	Cairo	Alexandria	Giza	Port Said
Weather				

1. In Cairo, it's sunny and hot. ____________________

2. ____________________

3. ____________________

4. ____________________

7 Complete for you and people you know the sentences with the words in the box:

اكمل الجمل بما يناسبك ويناسب من تعرفه من الاشخاص بكلمات من الاطار:

drought - flood - heat wave - sandstorms - windy

1. When it gets very ...windy... in the desert, there are sometimes sandstorms .
2. A .... happens when there is too much rain and rivers are full.
3. A .... is when it's very hot for a short time.
4. If it doesn't rain for a very long time and plants can't grow, there is a ....

8 Unjumble the letters to make words for places in town. Write the words under the pictures:

رتب الحروف لتكوين كلمات عن أماكن فى المدينة. اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:

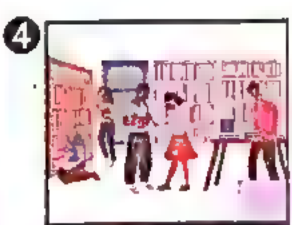
a. saqure
b. shpponig allm
c. kbna
d. sttanoi
e. lrbiray
f. fcaotry
g. mnetunmo

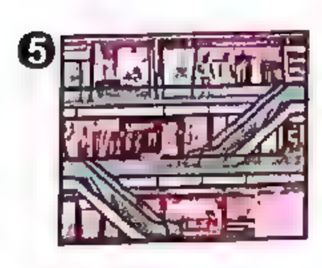
1 

bank

2 

3 

4 

5 

6 

7 



Theme 1 I discover myself

Unit 1

Green cities

مدن خضراء









Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.

   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب ويعمل بحث عن المساحات الخضراء في المدن.

2. Talk about how often we do things.

   - يتحدث الطالب عن عدد المرات التي نقوم فيها بعمل الأشياء.

3. Listen and read about a project to make a city greener.

   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.

4. Say the sounds (th) (θ) and (s) /s/.

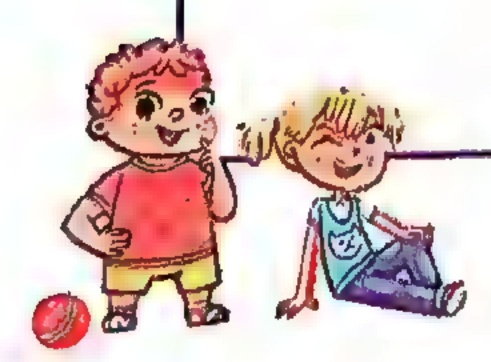
   - يقول الطالب الأصوات /s/ (s) و(θ) (th).

5. Write an email about things I miss about Egypt.

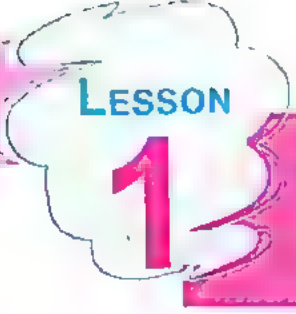
   - يكتب الطالب بريداً إلكترونياً عن الأشياء التي يفتقدها في مصر.

6. Research and make an infographic about my area.

   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعمل رسم بياني عن منطقته.







We work in the community garden









apartment block
عمارة سكنية



chemicals
مواد كيميائية



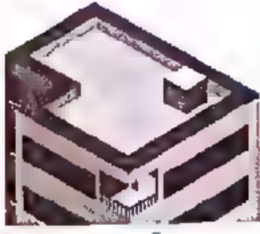
harvest
يحصد



natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعي



plant
يزرع



roof
سطح



potatoes	بطاطس
peppers	فلفل
onions	بصل
lettuce	خس

tomatoes	طماطم
pineapple	اناناس
dates	بلح
lemons	ليمون



Unit 1 Green cities



roof garden	حديقة علوية (فوق السطح)
local area	منطقة محلية
interesting	شيق / مثير
fresh	طازج
organic	عضوى (طبيعى بدون مواد كيميائية)
square meter	متر مربع
tomorrow	غدا
thanks	اشكرك
afternoon	بعد الظهر
community garden	حديقة اجتماعية
space	مساحة
volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حي سكني

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
plant	يزرع	planted
produce	ينتج	produced

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
sell	يبيع	sold
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



all the time	طول الوقت	a year	في السنة / سنويا	it sounds great	يبدو رائعا
in the middle of	في منتصف ..	make friends	يُكون صداقات		

Study the following

1. I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

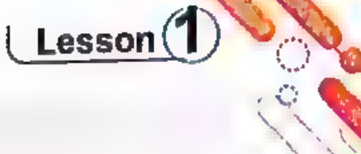
- أساعد عمتي دائما في الحديقة الاجتماعية بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة.

2. It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.

- إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمتي سلمى.

3. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

- نحن نزرع الخضار لنأكله ، وأحيانًا نبيعه في السوق أيضًا!



4 What things do you grow? - ما الأشياء التي تزرعها؟

5 Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. - في بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار الفاكهة.

6 People can grow their own fresh food. - يمكن للناس أن يزرعوا طعامهم الطازج.

7 We use natural fertilizer in organic food, we never use chemicals.

- نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية في الأغذية العضوية ، ولا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.

8 Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

- هل حديقتك تنتج الكثير من الخضراوات؟

9 Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city.

- تساعد الحدائق العلوية أيضًا في تنظيف الهواء في المدينة.

10 They're a great place to meet people and make friends.

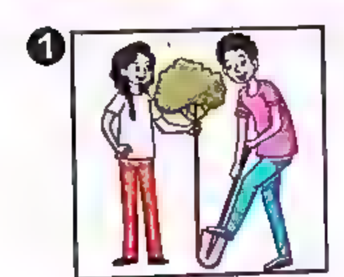
- إنها مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.

11 We need more community roof gardens in our city!

- نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من الحدائق العلوية الاجتماعية في مدينتنا!

1 Look and write انظر واكتب:

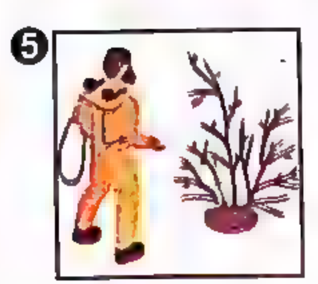
apartment block - chemicals - harvest - natural fertilizer - plant - roof

1  ------

2  ----------------

3  ----------------

4  ----------------

5  ----------------

6  ----------------

2 Listen and read. Where does Mariam go on Fridays?

استمع واقرأ. أين تذهب مريم فى أيام الجمعة؟


استمع إلى النص:


Tapescript

نص الاستماع

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Mariam : Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden[1].

Nour : The community garden? What's that?

Mariam : It's a big green space[2] on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block[3]. The people who work there are all volunteers[4] from the neighborhood[5]. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

Nour : That's interesting. What things do you grow?

Mariam : Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers[6], onions, lettuce[7] – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

Nour : And you grow all this food in the middle of the city? Wow!

Mariam : Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic,[8] too, which means we only use natural fertilizer[9] - we never use chemicals[10].

Nour : Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

Mariam : Yes, it does. From just one square meter[11] of roof garden, we can harvest[12] twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

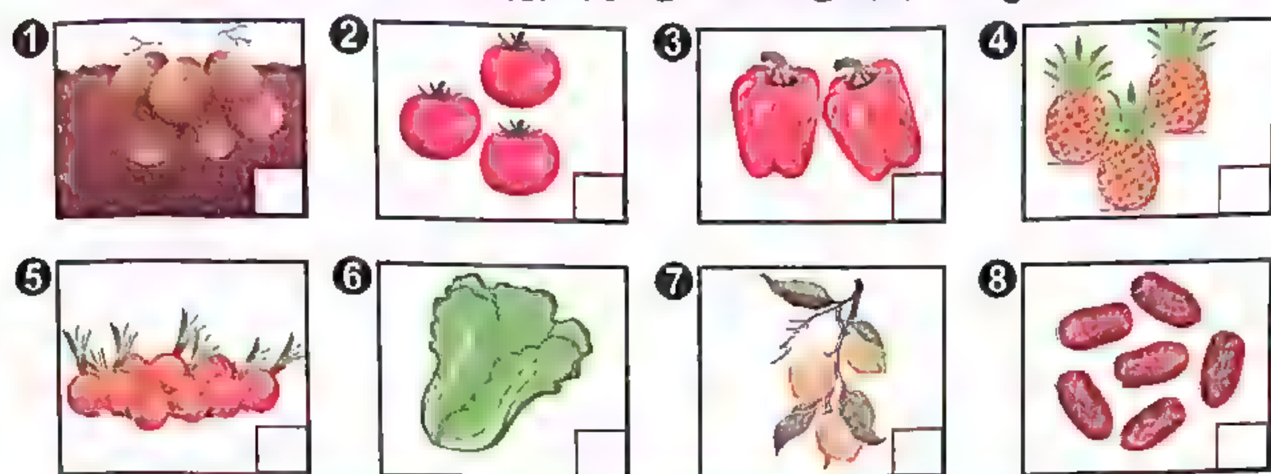
Nour : It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة علوية (اجتماعية)
٢- مساحة
٣- عمارة سكنية
٤- متطوعين
٥- حي سكني
٦- فلفل
٧- خس
٨- عضوي
٩- سماد طبيعي
١٠- مواد كيميائية
١١- متر مربع
١٢- يحصد

3 Listen and read again. Check (✓) the foods Mariam mentions:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع علامة (✓) على الاطعمة التى ذكرتها مريم :



4 Complete the summary with the words from the box:

اكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة :

aunt - clean - friends - grow - plants - roof - sell - tomorrow

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house ① ......tomorrow...... but Mariam goes to help her ② .... on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the ③ .... of an apartment block. They ④ .... vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they ⑤ .... them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the ⑥ .... also help to ⑦ .... the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new ⑧ ....

5 Work with a partner. Discuss these questions:

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة :

1. Does your family have a garden or a balcony? What do you grow there?
2. Where do the vegetables and fruit that you eat come from? Do they come from gardens or farms?

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries.
It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities.
These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

يعد التخضير الحضري (المدن والأحياء) جزءًا مهمًا من تخطيط المدن في العديد من البلدان.
وذلك يعني إنشاء مناطق للنباتات والأشجار في المدن. يمكن أن تكون هذه الأماكن حدائق عامة صغيرة بين المباني أو حدائق فوق اسطح منازل الناس.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	My grandpa lives in the city.		
2	He has a big farm.		
3	He plants pineapple.		
4	I help my grandpa to harvest the crops.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

block - community - lettuce - grow

Kareem: Where do you go on Fridays?

Wael: I always go to the ❶ ------------------------ garden.

Kareem: What is that?

Wael: It's a big green space on my friend's apartment ❷ ----------------.

Kareem: What does he ❸ --?

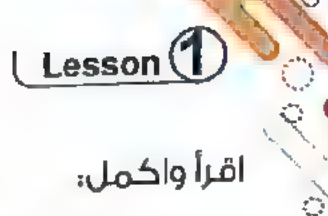
Wael: He usually plants peppers, onions and ❹ ----------------------.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1. They live in	a. onions and potatoes.
2. After they harvest plants	b. in organic food.
3. We plant	c. meat and fish.
4. We use natural fertilizer	d. they sell them.
	e. an apartment block.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





4 Read and complete: اقرأ واكمل:

roof - fertilizer - bathroom - plant

Helping the environment is very important .We can do this if we ❶ .... more trees .Some people plant flowers and other plants on the ❷ .... of their houses .They use natural ❸ .... to make the plants grow well.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers use .... to kill insects that eat the crops.

   a fertilizers   b crops   c chemicals   d lemons

2. I live in an .... in the city with my family.

   a tent   b apartment block   c cave   d factory

3. Farmers put natural .... on the soil to make plants grow well.

   a fertilizer   b fruits   c sugar   d oil

4. We have a farm and we .... many crops every year.

   a burn   b raise   c feed   d harvest

5. I plant flowers on the .... of my house.

   a bathroom   b roof   c bedroom   d kitchen

6. .... are people who work without getting money.

   a Engineers   b Farmers   c Volunteers   d Teachers

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. your - vegetables - garden - a lot of - Does - produce? ....

2. grow - to - eat - them - We - vegetables - and - sell. ....

3. help - clean - Roof - the air - in - the city - gardens. ....

4. your - have - family - Does - a garden? ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- it sounds great, mariam ....

2- what do you grow ,eyad ....





Part: 1 ⭐ We always work hard



استمع إلى المفردات.



foreign	اجنبى / غير اصلى المنشأ
project	مشروع
data	بيانات
naturally	طبيعيًا
link	رابط
normally	طبيعيًا / بشكل طبيعى
carefully	بحرص
living things	كائنات حية

logo	شعار
Mini forest	غابة صغيرة
Earth aid	مساعدة الارض
organization	منظمة/ مؤسسة
special	خاص
nature	الطبيعة
wildlife	الحياة البرية
urban locations	مواقع حضرية (المدن والاحياء)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
find out	يكتشف/ يعرف	found out
become	يصبح	became

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
collect	يجمع	collected
click	ينقر/ يضغط زر	clicked
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
offer	يعرض / يقدم	offered
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after

Phrases and expressions  عبارات وتعبيرات

work hard	يعمل بجد
over time	بمرور الوقت

Help your child to know about Mini forest organization. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن مؤسسة الغابة الصغيرة.





Study the following

1. Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our city.

– الغابة الصغيرة هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدينتنا.

2. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.

– تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة وتساعد الحياة البرية.

3. We never grow foreign plants in our projects.

– نحن لا نزرع نباتات أجنبية (غير اصلية المنشأ) ابدًا في مشاريعنا.

4. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area.

– نحن دائمًا نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقة ما.

5. We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests.

– عادة ما نعمل أيضًا مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والاعتناء بها.

6. We collect data from every forest.

– نقوم بجمع البيانات من كل غابة.

7. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

– يساعدنا هذا في فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الأشخاص والحياة البرية و مناخ المنطقة.

8. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects.

– نادرًا ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا.

9. We are always happy when people offer to help us.

– نسعد دائمًا عندما يعرض الناس مساعدتنا.

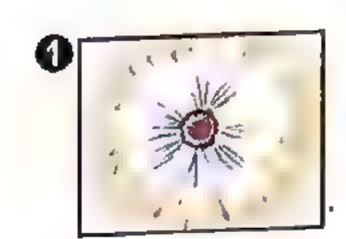
10. Click on the link to find out more.

– انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.

1 Listen and read. Choose the best logo for Mini Forest:

استمع واقرأ. اختر افضل شعار للغابة الصغيرة.

1



2



3







Home - About - Join us - Latest News - Contact us



Earth Aid

What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an organization (1) which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals, and other living things.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations (2) for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

We never grow foreign (3) plants in our projects (4), we always plant trees that grow naturally (5) in an area and we carefully (6) look after them until they become a small forest.

We also usually work with local communities (7) to plant and look after the forests over time (8).



We collect data (9) from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects (10) of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough volunteers (11) to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click (12) on the link (13) to find out more.

Arabic Meaning

١- مؤسسة
٢- مواقع حضرية (فى المدن)
٣- اجنبى (غير اصلى المنشأ)
٤- مشاريع
٥- طبيعيًا
٦- بعناية
٧- مجتمعات محلية
٨- بمرور الوقت
٩- بيانات
١٠- تأثيرات
١١- متطوعين
١٢- انقر
١٣- الرابط

2 Listen and read again. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook

استمع واقرأ مرة آخرى. ضع (✓) أو (✗). صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك.

1. The new green spaces help people and animals. ________
2. Mini Forest only plants trees that don't normally live in that country. ________
3. Mini Forest volunteers help to look after the trees. ________
4. The organization uses information about the forests for research. ________
5. The Mini Forest organization wants more people to join and help. ________





Part: 2



Lesson 2 Part: 2 — We always work hard

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

competition	مسابقة	snack	وجبة خفيفة
region	منطقة	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز	on time	في الوقت المحدد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
miss	يفتقد	missed
enter	يدخل	entered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
drive	يقود	drove
eat	يأكل	ate
speak	يتحدث	spoke

Language focus قواعد لغوية

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وأفعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

- He usually goes to school by bus.



◉ يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من

I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + inf. + (s-es-ies)

- She helps her mom every day.
- I visit my cousins every week.

Help your child to know about the present simple. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن المضارع البسيط.



2 Negative

I / We / You / They + don't / never + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + doesn't + inf. /never + inf. + (s-es-ies)

- We don't go to school on Friday.
- He doesn't live in a city.

لاحظ عند استخدام never فى النفى مع He/She/It يبقى الفعل كما هو بإضافة (s).

- She never uses a laptop.

3 Question



(كلمة استفهام) Do + I / we / you / they + inf. مصدر الفعل?

(كلمة استفهام) Does + he / she/ it + inf. مصدر الفعل?

When do you get up? - I get up early.

What does she need? - She needs her glasses.

للسؤال يمعنى هل نبدا السؤال ب Does/Do

- Do you like pizza?
- Yes, I do. إجابة مثبتة. - No, I don't. إجابة منفية.
- Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?
- Yes, he does. إجابة مثبتة. - No, he doesn't. إجابة منفية.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار



تنقسم ظروف التكرار إلى ظروف محددة (Definite) أى أنها تحدد عدد مرات حدوث الفعل .... مثل:
once/twice

وهناك ظروف غير محددة (Indefinite) وهى لا تحدد عدد المرات ولكن توضح نسبة حدوث الفعل من:

Always (100%) إلى Never (0%)

Indefinite	غير محددة
always	دائما
usually	عادة
often	غالبا
sometimes	أحيانا
rarely	نادرا
never	أبدا

Definite	محددة
once	مرة
twice	مرتين
three times	ثلاث مرات
every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع

0% never rarely sometimes often usually always 100%

◉ نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن نسبة / عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

◉ تاتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الاساسى وبعد فعل يكون (Verb to be).

- We always work hard at school.
- The weather is always cold in London.

◉ للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم:

How often do/does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- How often do you play football? - كم عدد المرات التى تلعب بها كرة القدم؟

◉ للاجابة عن السؤال السابق نستخدم ظروف التكرار المحددة وغير المحددة.

- How often do you study English?
- I usually study English.
- How often does she go to the club?
- She goes to the club once a week.

1 Circle the correct answers : ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحية:

1. The weather is **usually / never** sunny in Egypt in summer.
2. I **rarely / often** eat dates as a snack – I love them!
3. **How often / How ever** do you play football with your friends?
4. Samer **always / never** plays video games. He doesn't like them.
5. We **sometimes / always** go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.
6. You **rarely / sometimes** call me so late at night.Is something wrong?
7. Dr Mohsen is **never / always** late to work.He likes to be at the hospital on time.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences in your notebook: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل فى كراستك.

1. 10 pm / usually / in bed / before / I'm ------------------------------
2. always / My dad / a healthy breakfast / in the morning / eats ------------
3. never / Donia and Wael / late / are / for school ----------------------
4. the dentist / you / go / How / do / often / to / ? ----------------------



5. gives / sometimes / us / **Our teacher** / homework / on weekends ....

6. rains / **It** / the Western Desert / rarely / in ....

3 Circle the correct adverb in each sentence:

ضع دائرة حول الظرف الصحيح فى كل جملة :

1. We don't like fish at all. We **often / never** eat it.
2. Date palm trees **usually / never** produce fruit.
3. My aunt lives with us, so I **often / rarely** speak to her.
4. I **sometimes / never** do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evenin
5. Hany **rarely / often** plays football. He doesn't like sports.
6. My father **sometimes / always** drives me to work. It's very far and there is no trai or bus there.

4 Complete the paragraph with the time expressions from the box:

اكمل الفقرة بالعبارات الزمنية التى بالقائمة :

every day - once a (week) - twice a (month) - three times a (year)

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball ❶ ...., on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson ❷ ...., on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics ❸ .... after school – she never misses a day! ❹ ...., in June and December, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. Dalia always enters! Go Dalia!





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I .... my cousins every week.
   a visits b visit c visiting d doesn't visit
2. He .... eats rice because he doesn't like it.
   a rarely b always c don't d usually
3. You .... have good marks in the exam. Is something wrong?
   a always b usually c often d rarely
4. How .... do you study English? Three times a week.
   a much b many c long d often
5. Hani usually .... to school by bus.
   a go b goes c don't go d going
6. I .... a healthy breakfast before school so I don't eat there.
   a always have b have always c has always d always has
7. Amr and Hossam .... their mum in the kitchen.
   a help b helps c helping d doesn't help
8. We .... unhealthy food.
   a never eats b doesn't eat c never eat d eats
9. I play video games .... a week on Friday and Saturday.
   a once b three times c twice d four times
10. He goes to the beach .... a week on Fridays.
   a four times b once c twice d three times

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. My dad always .... (have) a healthy breakfast.
2. How .... (long) do you play video games? Twice a week.
3. Ahmed .... (always) travels to China. He doesn't go there.
4. We .... (doesn't) like tennis.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Green areas help
2. Mini forest organization
3. Click on the
4. How often do

B

a. plants trees.
b. you have a snack?
c. you play basketball.
d. people enjoy nature.
e. link to find out more.

4 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

once - usually - three times - rarely

We do many activities every week. We ❶ .... do exercise, we love doing this. We go to the park ❷............ a week on Friday. We ❸ .... play chess. We don't like it. In the evening we go to the movie theater to watch a movie.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. wildlife - help - our - Green - areas.

....

2. from - every - forest - data - We - collect.

....

3. rarely - We - enough - have - volunteers - help - to - us.

....

4. grow - that - naturally - plant - trees - We.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how often does mazin do exercise

....

2. i don t go to bed late

....



Lesson 3 Part: 1 ★ Reading & Pronunciation



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

pass through	يمر خلال
railway line	خط سكة حديد
local residents	سكان محليون
hang out	يقضي وقت في مكان / يتسكع
miss	يفتقد شخص او مكان
well	بصحة جيدة



Other words كلمات أخرى

New York	نيويورك
apartment block	عمارة سكنية
floor	طابق / دور
a great view	منظر رائع
green spaces	مساحات خضراء
no one	لا احد
famous	مشهور
High Line	خط سريع
species	فصائل / انواع
art works	اعمال فنية
theater performance	عرض مسرحي
noisy	مزعج
news	اخبار
taste	له مذاق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
create	ينشئ	created
decide	يقرر	decided
pass	يمر	passed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
run	يجري	ran
think	يفكر	thought
hang out	يتسكع	hung out

Definitions التعريفات

hang out	يقضي وقت/يتسكع	spend time with, relax together
local residents	سكان محليون	people who live in a neighborhood
passes through	يمر خلال	goes from one place to another
miss	يفتقد	feel sad that you can't have or see something
railway line	خط سكة حديد	a road for trains

Study the following

1. Our apartment block is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view.

– تقع شقتنا في الطابق السادس عشر، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة.

2. New York has a lot of green spaces.

– نيويورك بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء.

3. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park.

– قرر بعض السكان المحليين فكرة لتحويل السكك الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة طويلة وكبيرة.

4. It's a green space, with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it!

– إنها مساحة خضراء، مع اكثر من ٥٠٠ نوع من النباتات والأشجار!

5. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

– نيويورك صاخبة للغاية طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية اكثر هدوءًا في الليل.

6. There are lots of different restaurants here, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home.

– هناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا ولكن مذاق الطعام ليس مثل مذاق الطعام في البيت.

7. I think the food tastes more delicious.

– أعتقد ان الطعام طعمه الذ.

8. I miss our food so much!

– افتقد طعامنا للغاية!

1 What do you like about your neighborhood?

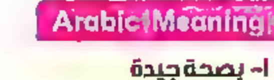
ما الذى تحبه فى حيك السكنى؟

2 Wael is in New York for a year with his family. Read his email. What's Wael's favorite place in New York?

وائل فى نيويورك لمدة عام مع عائلته. أقرأ بريده الاليكترونى. ما هو مكان وائل المفضل فى نيويورك؟

To : samer@email.com
From : waeltawfik@email.com
Subject : Life in New York

استمع إلى النص:



Arabic Meaning

١- بصحة جيدة
٢- الدور السادس عشر
٣- مساحات
٤- مشاريع
٥- سكان
٦- فصائل - أنواع
٧- أكثر هدوءاً

Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm well[1] and New York is great!
Our apartment block is on the sixteenth floor[2], so we have a great view of the city.
New York has a lot of green spaces[3]. There are also projects[4] to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?
Years ago, the High Line was **a railway line**, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some **local residents**[5] then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space, with more than 500 species[6] of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it can you, see art works, watch a theatre performance, eat delicious food, or go running, or just **hang out** with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It **passes through** our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents.
Here is one of my photos of it.
How are things in Alexandria? I **miss** home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter[7] at night.



There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!
Write soon and tell me all your news,
Wael



3 Match the words in bold to the definitions:

صل الكلمات المكتوبة بخط أسود عريض بالنص مع التعريفات:

1. spend time with, relax together ________
2. people who live in a neighborhood ________
3. goes from one place to another ________
4. feel sad that you can't have or see something ________
5. a road for trains ________

4 Read the email again. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

اقرأ البريد الإلكترونى مرة أخرى. اكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ. صحح العبارة الخاطئة فى كراستك:

1. Samer's family lives in a tall building. ________
2. There aren't many parks in New York. ________
3. Samer lives far from the High Line. ________
4. In the past, the High Line was a road. ________
5. The High Line is two and a half kilometers long. ________
6. Samer loves the local food. ________





Part: 2 ☆ The Selfish Giant




استمع إلى المفردات:

selfish giant	العملاق الأناني
wonderful	رائع
soft	لين / ناعم
wall	جدار / حائط
empty	فارغ
silent	هادئ / صامت
sweet	حلو (الطعم)
finally	أخيرًا

look out of	ينظر إلى الخارج من
hole	ثقب / فتحة
tiny	صغير جدا
suddenly	فجأة
branches	فروع
in one corner	في ركن واحد
on their way home	في طريقهم للمنزل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pass	يمر	passed
share	يشارك	shared
turn	يتحول	turned
cover	يغطي	covered
laugh	يضحك	laughed
open	يفتح	opened
climb up	يتسلق	climbed up
appear	يظهر	appeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hear	يسمع	heard
come back	يرجع	came back
build	يبني	built
sing	يغني / يغرد	sang

Help your child to read a story of The Selfish Giant. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة العملاق الأناني.



Study the following

1. There are colorful birds singing in the trees. - هناك طيور ملونة تغرد على الأشجار.
2. The lovely garden always makes the children happy. - الحديقة الجميلة دائما تجعل الأطفال سعداء.
3. The selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden. - لا يريد العملاق الأناني أن يشارك حديقته.
4. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. - تمر الأيام والحديقة دائمًا فارغة وساكنة.
5. The green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. - يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البني. الأوراق تسقط من الأشجار.
6. Then snow covers the garden and all the little birds and bees fly away. - ثم يغطي الثلج الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور الصغيرة والنحل بعيدًا.
7. Spring arrives in the village. - وصل فصل الربيع للقرية.
8. Everything is under the snow. - يكسو الثلج كل شئ.
9. When you're not selfish good things happen. - عندما لا تكون أنانيا فإن الاشياء الجيدة تحدث.

1 **Look at the picture. What season is it? Listen and read. Check your answer?** انظر إلى الصورة ما هو الفصل من فصول السنة؟ استمع واقرأ؟ تأكد من إجابتك؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



In a village, there lives a giant[1] who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful[2] birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

But the selfish[3] giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play.

Arabic Meaning:

١- عملاق

٢- ذات ألوان كثيرة

٣- أناني





The days pass[4] and the garden is always empty and silent[5]. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

٤-يمر
٥- ساكن/هادئ
٦-ثقب/فتحة
٧-تتفتح
٨-ركن/زاوية
٩-صغيرة جدا
١٠-فروع

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful in spring! What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound.
A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.
He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole[6] in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening[7] around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.
But in one corner[8] of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny[9] boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why spring didn't come," he says, "I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches[10] and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says,"good things happen."

2 Number the sentences in the correct order (1 - 5):

رقم الجمل فى الترتيب الصحيح من ١ الى ٥

- [ ] Spring finally comes to the giant's garden.
- [ ] The children, birds, and bees stop coming to the giant's garden.
- [ ] A hole appears in the garden wall.
- [ ] The giant builds a wall around his garden.
- [1] The local children play in the giant's garden every day.

3 Work with a partner. Discuss:

اعمل مع زميلك . وناقش

1. Why do you think it was winter for a long time in the giant's garden?

Because he built a big wall around the garden so the snow covered everything.

2. What do you think 'selfish' means in the last paragraph? Why?

----

3. How is the giant different at the end of the story?



◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق حرفى (th) مثل حرف (ث) فى اللغة العربية حيث نخرج اللسان عند نطقه مثل (thin) ونرمز له بالرمز الصوتي /θ/.

◉ وندرس نطق حرف (S) حيث نستخدم الأسنان الامامية ولا نخرج اللسان مثل sing ونرمز له بالرمز الصوتي /s/.

th /θ/



S /s/



th

path	طريق
thing	شئ
thick	سميك
thanks	شكرا
threaten	يهدد
through	خلال

s

so	لذلك
pass	يمر
soft	ناعم / لين
selfish	انانى

1 Listen and circle the word you hear? استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى تسمعها:

(نص الإستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. a thick b sick
2. a throw b so
3. a path b pass
4. a mouth b mouse
5. a thing b sing

2 Listen and complete the words with (s) or (th): استمع واكمل الكلمات:

1. – eed	2. – – irsty	3. – talk
4. – – anks	5. ba – –	6. bu –
7. – oft	8. – elfish	9. – – rough

3 Listen, read and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. I think I have six thick thumbs.
2. The thin mouse thinks it's sick.
3. The sunset sky is sunny, but thunder threatens.



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

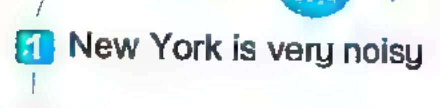
استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	I read and buy books at the library.		
2	They go shopping at the shopping center.		
3	There are a few restaurants in the city.		
4	The food is tasty at the restaurants.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 New York is very noisy	a. more delicious.
2 I think the food tastes	b. restaurants here.
3 There are colorful birds	c. and tastes bad.
4 There are lots of different	d. all the time.
	e. singing in the trees.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالى واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our neighborhood is the place where we live. Our neighborhood has a nice park where people go to relax and enjoy nature. People love parks because they provide them with fresh air and green spaces. We have a bus stop close by, so people don't have to travel far for transportation. Grocery stores are near so everyone can buy what they need. Neighbors should be careful about what they do around other neighbors.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

I am happy living here because it is a safe place. People around me are friendly and helpful. I feel comfortable when I walk along the streets. There are many things to do in this neighborhood. I enjoy going out for walks and spending time with friends. I also like watching movies and playing sports. We should always try to keep our neighborhood clean.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about your ....

a restaurant   b park   c neighborhood   d grocery store

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a neighbors   b parks   c bus stop   d banks

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people love parks?

....

4. What should we do for our neighborhood?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختار الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We went to the museum and .... through big gates.

a slept   b built   c passed   d missed

2. Egypt is creating a new .... line for the train station.

a airport   b ferry   c pool   d railway

3. A lot of local .... in Aswan work in tourism.

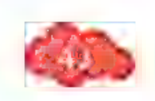
a residents   b tourists   c farmers   d fishermen

4. When we have free time, we can just .... out and have a good time.

a miss   b hang   c pass   d taste

5. When I went on holiday I .... my friends.

a lived   b hated   c missed   d sold





5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. sixteenth - block - is - on - the - Our - floor - apartment.

----

2. spaces - has - a lot - of - New York - green .

----

3. our - I - food - so - miss - much!

----

4. grass - green - turns - brown - The.

----

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend, Samy to tell him about your neighborhood.

Your name is Kareem and your email address is kareem@gmail.com and your friend's email address is samy@hotmail.com



many places - friendly

To:

From:

Subject:





Lesson 4 Writing



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

The Meadows	حديقة عامة كبيرة في إدنبرة ، اسكتلندا
third floor	الدور الثالث
the other side	الجانب الاخر
a great view	منظر رائع
distance	مسافة
Edinburgh Castle	قلعة ادينبيرج

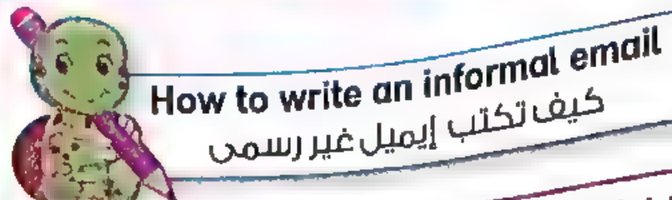
warm	دافئ
especially	خصوصا
For example	على سبيل المثال
Scottish	اسكتلندى الجنسية
porridge	عصيدة
honey	عسل
family tradition	تقليد عائلى



Study the following

1. How are things with you? – كيف حالك؟
2. Our apartment is in the city center. – شقتنا في وسط المدينة.
3. It's on the third floor. – إنها في الطابق الثالث.
4. We have a great view over the trees. – لدينا إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار.
5. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends.
   – يستخدم الناس الحديقة كثيرًا لممارسة الرياضة ومقابلة الاصدقاء.
6. There are lots of things I miss about Egypt.
   – هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي افتقدها في مصر.
7. Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better!
   – الطعام الاسكتلندي جيد لكن الطعام المصري أفضل!
8. For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge.
   – على سبيل المثال ، يأكل الكثير من الاسكتلنديين العصيدة فى الافطار.
9. I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!
   – أفتقد جدا إفطاري المصري المفضل ، الفول مدمس!
10. The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school.
   – الناس هنا لطيفون ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء الجُدد في المدرسة.





◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس كيفية كتابة البريد الاليكترونى غير الرسمى حيث يبدا بـ

1. Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية
- Hello
- Hi,

2. A friendly expression تعبير ودود
- Hey! How are you doing?
- How are things with you?
- 'How's it going?'
- What's up with you?
- I hope you're well.
- Or if you are responding to an email that your friend sent you, you could say:

◉ اما إذا كان الإيميل ردًا على إيميل سابق نقول،

- Thanks for your email.
- It was great to hear from you.
- I enjoyed reading your email.

3. Opening sentence جملة افتتاحية
- I just wanted to let you know...
- I'm writing because...

4. Informal expressions عبارات غير رسمية
- a really cool park,
- Hope you're doing well!

5. A request to reader طلب من القارئ
- Please write back soon

6. Closing phrase عبارة ختامية
- Lots of love
- See you soon!
- Can't wait to hear about ....
- Love, [your name]
- All the best, [your name]



Help your child to write an email.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا.

Example:



To: ramy@gmail.com

From: hassan@yahoo.com

Subject: Birthday party

Hi Ramy,
How's it going?
Thanks for sending me the photos of your holiday. It looks like you had a great time! How's your family? And what about your pet?
I'm sorry that I couldn't get to your birthday party. I was really busy. Thanks for the invitation.
Can you send me some photos from the party? I'd love to see how it all went.
I can't wait until you come to visit in March. Do you know how long you'll stay?
I'll try to think of some fun things to do.
See you soon.
All the best,
Hassan



Read Donia's email to her friend Laila in Luxor. What two things does she miss about Egypt?

اقرأ البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بـ(دنيا) لصديقتها (ليلى) فى الأقصر. اكتب شيئين تفتقدهم (ليلى) في مصر.

She misses the .... and the ....

From: donia@qwikmail.com

To: laila@egyptmail.com

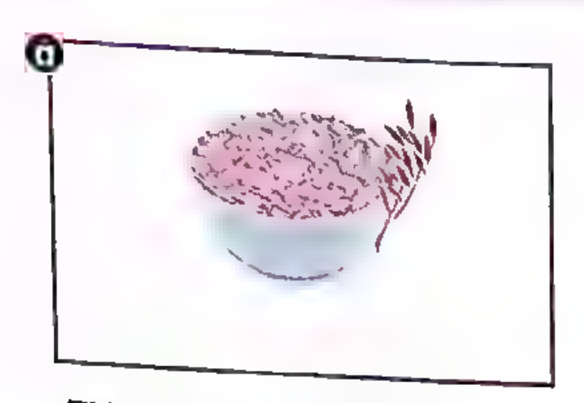
Subject: My new life in Scotland

Hi Laila,
How are things with you?
I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!
Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. In the distance we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too!
I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt - the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!
The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!
Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.
Lots of love,
Donia



2 Read the email again. Find words to complete the picture captions:

اقرأ البريد الإلكترونى مرة أخرى. اوجد كلمات لتكمل التعليق اسفل الصورة.



a

This is a bowl of ....
It's made with ....
and ....



b

This is the ....of Edinburgh.
It has a cool .... called the
Meadows and a famous ....

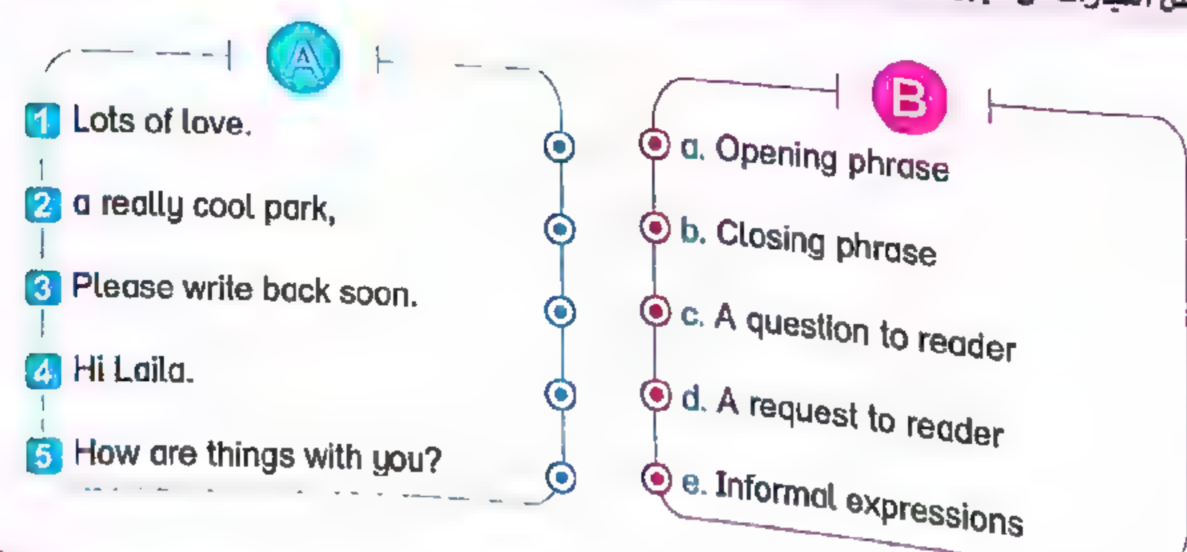
Tip!

An informal email is a message you write to friends or family. An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

الايميل غير الرسمى هو رسالة تكتب للأصدقاء او للعائلة - الايميل غير الرسمى يجب أن يكون ودودًا فى طريقة كتابته. استخدم لغة غير رسمية وادرج جمل افتتاحية وختامية.

3 Match the phrases from the email to their function in the text:

صل العبارات من البريد الإلكترونى بوظيفتهم فى النص،



A	B
1 Lots of love.	a. Opening phrase
2 a really cool park,	b. Closing phrase
3 Please write back soon.	c. A question to reader
4 Hi Laila.	d. A request to reader
5 How are things with you?	e. Informal expressions



1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. People use the park a lot for
2. Scottish food is OK but
3. For example, for breakfast
4. I have a lot of new

B

a. a lot of Scottish people eat porridge.
b. friends at school.
c. sports and meeting people.
d. Egypt is big.
e. Egyptian food is better!

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - with - How - you - things? --
2. center - is - in - the - city - Our - apartment. --
3. third - on - the - It's - floor. --
4. trees - have - a great - view - We - over - the. --

3 Write an email to your friend Amir to tell him about the things you miss about Egypt:

Your name is Waleed and your email address is waleed@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir@gmail.com

مجاب آخر الوحدة

food - people

To:

From:

Subject:

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





Key vocabulary



apartment block
عمارة سكنية



chemicals
مواد كيميائية



harvest
يحصد



plant
يزرع



natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعى



roof
سطح

Fruit and vegetables ماكهة وخضروات



potatoes	بطاطس
peppers	فلفل
onions	بصل
lettuce	خس

tomatoes	طماطم
pineapple	اناناس
dates	بلح
lemons	ليمون

Mini forest	غابة صغيرة
organization	منظمة / مؤسسة
special	خاص
nature	الطبيعة
wildlife	الحياة البرية
railway line	خط سكة حديد
local residents	سكان محليون

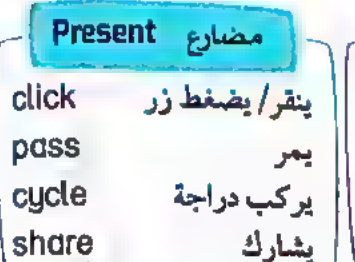
selfish giant	العملاق الأنانى
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
foreign	أجنبى
hang out	يقضى وقت / يتسكع
miss	يفتقد شخص او مكان
well	بصحة جيدة

Help your child revise Unit 1.

ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
click	ينقر / يضغط زر	clicked
pass	يمر	passed
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	found out
become	يصبح	became
drive	يقود	drove
build	يبني	built
sing	يغني / يغرد	sang
hang out	يتسكع	hung out

Language Focus قواعد لغوية

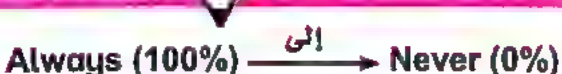
The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

	Statement جملة	Negative نفي	Question سؤال
I / We / You / They	+ inf. مصدر الفعل	+ don't / never + inf.	Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It	+ inf. + (s-es-ies)	+ doesn't + inf. /never + inf. + (s-es-ies)	Does + فاعل + inf.?

- He usually goes to school by bus.
- I visit my cousins every week.
- We don't go to school on Friday.
- He doesn't live in a city.
- Do you like pizza?
- Yes, I do. ◉إجابة مثبتة. - No, I don't. ◉إجابة منفية.
- Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?
- Yes, he does. ◉إجابة مثبتة. - No, he doesn't. ◉إجابة منفية.

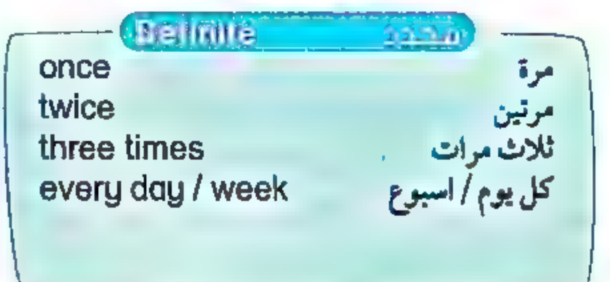
Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار



Always (100%) —إلى→ Never (0%)

Indefinite غير محدد

always	دائما
usually	عادة
often	غالبا
sometimes	احيانا
rarely	نادرا
never	ابدا



Definite محدد

once	مرة
twice	مرتين
three times	ثلاث مرات
every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع

◉ نستخدم ظروف التكرار للاجابة عن سؤال **How often**.

- How often do you play football?

I play football twice a week. \ I sometimes play football.

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 3

1

New Message Cc Bcc

To samy@hotmail.com

From kareem@gmail.com

Subject My neighborhood

Dear Samy,

How are you?

I'd like to tell you about my neighborhood. My neighborhood isn't very big but there are many places here. There is one park where we can have fun and practice sports. I have lunch at a nice restaurant that serves delicious food. Our neighbors are helpful and friendly. Our neighborhood is clean because we look after it. We put trash in bins and we plant trees and flowers.

See you soon,

Yours,

Kareem

Lesson 4

2

New Message

To amir@gmail.com Cc Bcc

From waleed@yahoo.com

Subject Things I miss about Egypt

How's it going? I hope you're well.

I just want to tell you about my visit to England.

I traveled to England two weeks ago. I like England, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather and the food! English food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of English people eat sausages, eggs (fried or boiled) and toast. I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames and falafel!

Please write back soon

Lots of love

Waleed





Al-Azhar Test

My apartment block

3. Our apartment block is on the third floor. We have a great view of the city. Cairo has a lot of green areas. There are a lot of plants and trees. There are lots of restaurants here.

Activity Unit 1

Your community garden

4. We have a community garden in our neighborhood. A community garden is a big green space. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables and fruit. We sometimes sell them in the market.

This garden helps clean the air in the city and it is a great place to meet people and make friends.

Al-Azhar Test



الأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle is a ....
   - a farmer
   - b doctor
   - c teacher

2. He .... vegetables and fruits.
   - a eats
   - b grows
   - c waters

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:
أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

sell - grow - do

A : Hello, Do you .... vegetables in your garden?

B : Yes, I ....

A : What do you do with them ?

B : We usually eat or .... them in the market.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:
أقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

My name is Ahmed. There are four people in my family. My father, my mother, my sister and me. My mother goes shopping every week. We have a roof garden. We plant onions, tomatoes and potatoes. Sometimes we plant fruit. We use natural fertilizer. Roof gardens help clean the air in the city.

Choose the correct answer:

1. There are .... people in the family. (four – three - two)
2. My mother goes shopping every .... (year- day - week)
3. We have a .... garden. (bath - roof - kitchen)
4. We plant onions and .... (lemons - dates - tomatoes)
5. We use .... fertilizer. (natural - normal - chemical)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We often .... fish.
   - a eat
   - b eating
   - c eats

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. Early spring is the best season to .... seeds in the ground.

ⓐ harvest ⓑ sell ⓒ plant

3. The weather is usually .... in Egypt in summer.

ⓐ cold ⓑ rainy ⓒ sunny

4. I .... often see my school friends at weekends.

ⓐ don't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ didn't

5. There's a/an .... line near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.

ⓐ railway ⓑ airport ⓒ bus stop

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. nature - areas - people - Green - enjoy - help.

....

2. grow - lemons - do - Where?

....

3. all - like - We - fish - at - don't.

....

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My apartment block

....

....

....

....

....

....



Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Hala has two brothers.		
2 She lives in the village.		
3 She doesn't like going to the park.		
4 She helps her mum on Friday.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

gymnasium - times - gym - practice

Ahmed: How often do you do exercise?

Hamza : I do exercise three ❶ ------------------------------ a week.

Ahmed: What is your favorite sport?

Hamza : I like ❷ ------------------------------.

Ahmed: Where do you ❸ ------------------------------ it?

Hamza : In the ❹ ------------------------------.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:





A

1. We grow vegetables
2. The food
3. We use natural
4. Local residents are

B

a. fertilizer in organic food .
b. people who live in a neighborhood.
c. chemicals in organic food.
d. to eat and sell them.
e. tastes more delicious.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. I often .... (sees) my aunt and uncle.
2. You .... (always) play video games with me. Don't you like them?
3. Nada sometimes............. (watch) football matches on TV.
4. He .... (never is) late for school.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Banana fruit is one of the largest and most important fruit crops. We can use them to make muffins, cakes, and bread. This fruit needs a lot of water and sunlight.

A banana plant grows in six to seven months, but it could take up to a year depending on the weather.

Bananas are cultivated in over 150 countries and come in over 1000 different kinds. The world's biggest banana producers are India and China. India produces 29 million tons each year, while China produces 11 million tons.

Green bananas are used for cooking . Yellow bananas, on the other hand, have a sweeter taste because they have more sugar.

Bananas fruit are rich in vitamin C.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A banana plant needs ....months to grow.

   a two   b three   c seven   d twenty

2. We can use yellow bananas to make cakes because they have ....

   a salt   b flour   c sugar   d milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the world's biggest banana producers?.....................
4. What does a banana fruit need to grow?.....................

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You can use old coffee as a natural .... for plants in your garden.

   a trunk   b stalk   c fertilizer   d chemical

2. I prefer to eat fruit that is natural and organic with no.............

   a water   b taste   c chemicals   d delicious



3. The Nile Delta has very fertile farming areas and the people .... rice there every year.

ⓐ harvest ⓑ destroy ⓒ turn ⓓ look

4. The people who work in the community garden are all ....

ⓐ footballers ⓑ residents ⓒ engineers ⓓ teachers

5. We .... see my aunt and uncle. They live in Australia now.

ⓐ rarely ⓑ often ⓒ always ⓓ often

6. We .... go to Sharm el-Sheik for our holidays. We all love the sea there and we go every year.

ⓐ don't ⓑ rarely ⓒ usually ⓓ never

7. We .... go to Alexandria in the winter. It's too cold and I don't like cold weather.

ⓐ often ⓑ never ⓒ always ⓓ usually

8. How .... does your teacher give you homework?

ⓐ old ⓑ often ⓒ long ⓓ ever

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - neighbors - and - Our friendly - helpful. ....
2. leaves - from - The - fall - the trees. ....
3. miss - food - I - so - much - our! ....
4. have - a - the - trees - great - We - view - over. ....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your community garden

green space - plant

....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i love my country egypt ....
2. did you travel to scotland ....



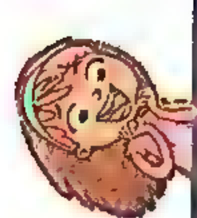


Unit 2

We are all different

نحن جميعًا مختلفون





Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about people's personalities.

   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن السمات الشخصية للناس.

2. Make clear what people, places, and things I'm talking about using who, which and where.

   - يوضح الطالب عن من يتكلم اشخاص أو اماكن أو اشياء باستخدام which, who, where.

3. Describe my own and other people's feelings.

   - يصف الطالب ما يشعر به هو والآخرين.

4. Say the sounds / ʌ / and /æ/. - يقول الطالب الأصوات / æ / و / ʌ /.

5. Write a paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.

   - يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن الصفات الايجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.

6. Make a leaflet about your school.

   - يقوم الطالب بعمل نشرة توضيحية عن مدرسته.







Lesson 1 ☆ He's very clever

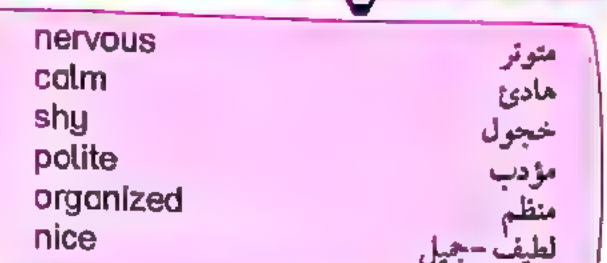


Key vocabulary



استمع الى المفردات.

Adjectives صفات



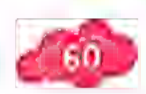
nervous	متوتر
calm	هادئ
shy	خجول
polite	مؤدب
organized	منظم
nice	لطيف - جميل
clever	ماهر - شاطر
messy	فوضوي / غير منظم
kind	عطوف
friendly	ودود
helpful	متعاون - مساعد - مفيد
funny	مضحك - مرح



student	طالب
come on	هيا
break	إستراحة (فسحة)
a bit	قليلا
already	بالفعل
personality	شخصية
respect	احترام
intelligent	ذكي
textbooks	الكتب الدراسية
extra	اضافي / زائد
science classroom	حجرة الفصل الخاصة بمادة العلوم
copy	نسخة
worksheet	ورقة الأسئلة
really	حقا / جدًا
floor	أرضية الحجرة
take you around	يأخذك في جولة

Definitions التعريفات

friendly	ودود	nice to others, helpful
shy	خجول	worried about talking to people, quiet
clever	ذكي / ماهر	intelligent, good at school work
polite	مؤدب	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect
messy	فوضوي	not tidy or organized
organized	مرتب / منظم	tidy, careful
nervous	متوتر	not calm, worried



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stay	يبقي / يظل	stayed
worry	يقلق	worried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
show	يعرض / يبين	showed
take	يأخذ	took
feel	يشعر	felt
meet	يقابل	met

Study the following

1. You look worried. Is everything OK? – يبدو عليك القلق. هل كل شئ على ما يرام؟
2. Let's go meet some of my friends. – هيا بنا نقابل بعض من أصدقائي.
3. I feel a bit nervous and shy. – اشعر انني متوتر وخجول قليلا.
4. Don't worry, We are all very friendly. – لا تقلق، كلنا ودودين.
5. He's very clever and he's good at math. – هو ماهر (شاطر) جدا وجيد في الرياضيات.
6. Do you have all your books yet? – هل لديك كل الكتب الدراسية؟
7. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have. – انا غير متأكد اي من الكتب الدراسية التي امتلكها.
8. We can share my book today. – من الممكن ان نتشارك كتابي اليوم.
9. I have an extra copy of the worksheets. – لدي نسخة اضافية من ورقة الاسئلة.
10. Wow! You're really organized. – رائع. انت منظم للغاية.
11. Come on, I'll show where the science classroom is. – هيا سوف اريك مكان حجرة الفصل الخاصة بمادة العلوم.
12. We should help him make friends. – يجب أن نساعده ليكون صداقات.

1 Listen and read. How does Hazem feel today? Why?

استمع واقرأ : كيف يشعر حازم اليوم؟لماذا؟

استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Asser : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look **worried** (1). Is everything OK?

Hazem : Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a **bit** (2) **nervous** and **shy**.

Asser : Don't worry, we are all **friendly**. I can help you get to know the school.

Hazem : Really! Can you?

Asser : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at **break** (3)! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

Basel : Hi, Asser!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very **clever** (4) and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

Basel : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

Asser : He's so **polite**! (5)

Basel : Thanks. Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

Hazem : I'm not **sure** (6). I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit **messy**. I'm not sure which **textbooks** (7) I already have.

Basel : We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

Hazem : Wow! You're really **organized** (8). Thanks, Basel!

Asser : Come on, I'll show where the science classroom is.

Arabic Meaning

١- قلق
٢- قليلاً
٣- فسحة/راحة
٤- ماهر - شاطر
٥- مؤدب
٦- متأكد
٧- كتب دراسية
٨- منظم - مُرتب

2 Read again and answer:

اقرأ مرة اخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة؟

1. How does Asser help Hazem? Why?

----

2. Who is Basel?

----

3. What does Basel offer to share with Hazem?



3 Look at the bold words in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل فى النص. صل كل كلمة بمعناها:

A	B
1 friendly	a. not tidy or organized
2 shy	b. nice to others, helpful
3 clever	c. tidy, careful
4 polite	e. intelligent, good at school work
5 messy	e. not calm, worried
6 organized	f. worried about talking to people, quiet
7 nervous	g. speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect

4 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 3.

أكمل الجمل من التمرين رقم ٣.

1. Sarah is very friendly . She likes talking to people.
2. Hani is very .... He shows respect to everyone.
3. Salma is never .... She is calm and relaxed.
4. Salah is .... There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
5. If a new student is ...., we should help him make friends.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting.
People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

- الطريقة التى تتحرك بها تعطى الناس معلومات عن شخصيتك. لكل شخص طريقة مختلفة للتحرك بالمثل كما أن لكل منا خط يده.
- الاشخاص التى تتحرك بنفس الطريقة عادة يصبحوا اصدقاء ويعملوا معًا بشكل جيد.



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Adel's friend is Hatem.		
2	Hatem is very clever.		
3	Hatem is very nervous.		
4	Hatem stays with Adel at break.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

OK - polite - worry - nervous

Asser : Hi! Welcome to our school.

Basel : Hi! Thank you. I don't know anyone here.

Asser : Don't ❶ ------------------------------ , we are all friendly.

Basel : I feel a bit ❷ -- and shy.

Asser : Let's meet some friends. They are so ❸ --------------- . Is everything ❹ ---------------?

Basel : Sure.

3 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

help - messy - clever - bad

I'm Sama. I have a lot of friends. My friends are all different. They ❶ ------------- me do homework. My friend Salma is always ❷ ------------- . She is not tidy or organized. My friend Nadine is good at math. She is very ❸ --------------- .

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



1. He's very clever,
2. We can share
3. I feel a bit
4. Do you have all

- a. my book today.
- b. nervous and shy.
- c. he's good at maths.
- d. here today.
- e. your books yet?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sara is always ...., she is worried about talking to people.
   a shy b friendly c clever d messy
2. My friend Amr is intelligent, he is good at maths, he is ....
   a messy b bad c clever d ugly
3. When I forget my book at school, I can .... my friend's book.
   a eat b share c sure d help
4. I have a lot of books in my room everywhere, I'm a bit ....
   a shy b messy c calm d happy

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. go - meet - Let's - some - friends - my - of. ....
2. should - We - him - help - friends - make. ....
3. You - have - Do - your - all - books - yet? ....
4. to - school - Welcome - our. ....

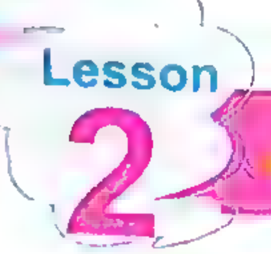
7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:



1- i have an extra copy of the worksheets, asser ....

2- how does hazem feel today ....





This is where we study science





استمع الى المفردات.

website	موقع على الإنترنت
page	صفحة
main	رئيسي - أساسي
laboratory	معمل
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي
five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية
fantasy TV series	مسلسل تليفزيوني خيالي
The IT Building	مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات
equipment	معدات
experiments	تجارب علمية

Gymnasium = Gym	صالة ألعاب رياضة
playground	فناء/ ملعب
bench	مقعد طويل
fountain	نافورة
laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
physical education	التربية البدنية
pharmacy	صيدلية
medicine	دواء
spaceship	سفينة فضاء



ostrich	نعامة
the west court	القاعة الغربية
desktop computer	كمبيوتر مكتبي
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
school subjects	المواد الدراسية
department	قسم
of all age groups	من جميع الفئات العمرية

tourist information	معلومات سياحية
basketball	كرة السلة
handball	كرة اليد
gymnastics	الجمباز
pet	حيوان اليف
proud	فخور
popular with	محبوب من
alive	حي
result	نتيجة (الامتحان مثلا)



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
use	يستخدم	used
study	يدرس / يذاكر	studied
borrow	يستلف / يستعير	borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
run after	يُدير مكان	ran after
feel	يشعر	felt
spend	يقضى وقت	spent
hide	يختبئ	hid
take place	يحدث	took place



Study the following

1. We are proud of our new, modern buildings.

   – نحن فخورون بالمبانى الجديدة والحديثة الخاصة بنا.

2. Study the map, and find out where the main buildings are.

   – ادرس الخريطة واكتشف أين المبانى الرئيسية.

3. Students come here for their information technology lessons.

   – يأتى الطلاب إلى هنا من اجل حصص تكنولوجيا المعلومات.

4. This is the place where students study science. – هذا هو المكان حيث يدرس الطلاب العلوم.

5. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories.

   – يوجد أربعة فصول ومعملين جديدين.

6. The laboratories have all equipment. – المعامل بها كل المُعدات.

7. This is a large open area where students spend time outside.

   – هذه منطقة كبيرة ومفتوحة حيث يقضى التلاميذ الوقت بالخارج.

8. He is the teacher who helps in the garden. – هذا هو المُعلم الذى يساعد بالحديقة.

9. We have over 50 desktop computers which students can borrow.

   – لدينا أكثر من (٥٠) خمسون حاسب آلى يستطيع الطلاب استعارتهم.

10. This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms.

    – هذا المبنى حيث يمكنك أن تجد الحجرات الدراسية للحاسب الآلى .

Language Focus
قواعد لغوية

Relative clauses
ضمائر الوصل

who, which, where

- نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء معلومات عن شخص أو شيء أو مكان ما، ونستخدم هذه الكلمات مع المفرد والجمع. ونستخدم أيضًا هذه الضمائر بدلاً من تكرار الفاعل مرتين.

1 who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذى / التى للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتى للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل فى الجملة.

- Mr Ahmed is a teacher. He teaches English.
- Mr Ahmed is a teacher who teaches English.

2 which

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذى / التى لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) فى الجملة.

- These are shoes. I wear the shoes at school.
- These are shoes which I wear at school.

3 where

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن فى الجملة.

- This is a building. We do physical education at the building.
- This is the building where we do physical education.

الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

-ed adjectives		-ing adjectives	
excited	متحمس	exciting	مثير
interested in	مهتم بـ	interesting	شيق
surprised	مندهش	surprising	مدهش
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل
tired	مُتعب	tiring	مُتعِب

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشيئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص

كما بالمثال :

1. I am excited.
أنا متحمسة.

2. She is interested in science.
هي مهتمة بدراسة العلوم.

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيئ المسبب للشعور كما بالمثال :

1. The football game is exciting. كرة القدم لعبة مثيرة. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)
2. This TV show is really surprising.

هذا العرض التليفزيوني مدهش جدًا. (هنا العرض التليفزيوني هو المسبب للدهشة).

● قارن الأمثلة لتفهم:

1- I am bored. اشعر بالملل.
- He is boring. هو شخص ممل (مسبب للملل)
2- She is tired. هى مُتعَبة (تشعر بالصفة).
- This job is tiring. هذه وظيفة مُتعِبة (تسبب الصفة)



Look at the text and picture. What type of text is it? Choose:

انظر إلى النص والصور. أى من أنواع النصوص يكون ؟

1. a poster about a school
2. a tourist information website
3. a page from a school website



Read the text. Which school subjects are mentioned?



استمع إلى النص:

اقرأ النص. أى مواد دراسية تم ذكرها ؟

El Fouad School

Home About contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of(1). We are proud of our new, modern(2) buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main(3) buildings are, and what we use them for.

Arabic Meaning

١- فخور بـ
٢- حديث
٣- رئيسى
٤- معامل
٥- معدات
٦- مقاعد
٧- نافورة

1 The Ahmed Zewail Building

This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories(4). These laboratories have all the equipment(5) which classes need to do experiments.

2 The West Court

This is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also [illegible](6) to sit on under the trees and a water [illegible](7) if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

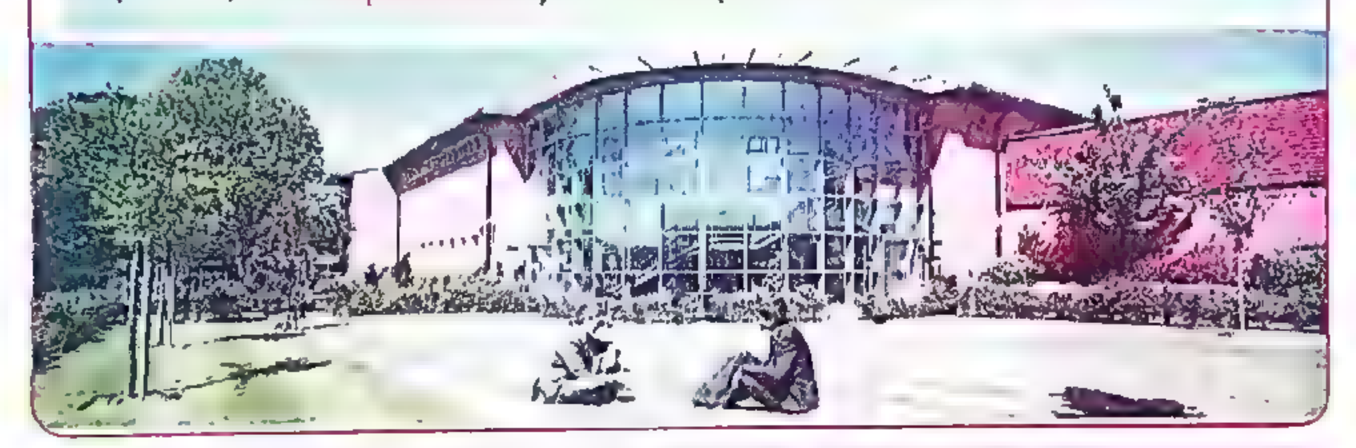
3 The IT Building(8)

This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

٨- مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات
٩- صالة الألعاب الرياضية
١٠- الجمباز
١١- الرياضة البدنية
١٢- كرة قدم خماسية
١٣- قسم

4 The 2024 Gym

The yellow building is our new gymnasium(9). We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics(10) during physical education(11) lessons. There are some teachers who run after-school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football(12) (Mr Afifi, math department(13)) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).



3 Match the parts of the sentences. Then read again and check. Which words help join the parts?

صل أجزاء الجمل ببعضها، ثم اقرأ مرة أخرى وتأكد.

A

1. This is the place where
2. These laboratories have all the equipment which
3. This is a large open area where
4. He is the teacher who
5. This is the building where
6. We have laptops and tablets which
7. There are some teachers who



B

a. students have break.
b. students can borrow.
c. students study science.
d. run after-school sports clubs here, too.
e. you can find our new computer classrooms.
f. helps in the garden.
g. students need to do experiments.

4 Complete the sentences with who, which, or where:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام who، which، where،

1. Dalia is the girl ...who... . sits next to me in the English class.
2. An ostrich is a big bird .... can't fly.
3. This is the street .... my uncle lives.
4. I really love the red flowers .... grow in our garden.
5. The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.

5 Join the pairs of sentences using who, which, or where:

اربط الجُمل باستخدام ضمائر الوصل،

1. Hany is my friend. He has a pet lizard.
   Hany is my friend who has a pet lizard.
2. These are the class computers. We use them for projects.
   ----
3. Bees are insects. Bees make honey.
   ----
4. A pharmacy is a shop. You can buy medicine there.
   ----
5. That is another classroom. We have science lessons there.
   ----
6. Laila is the tall girl. She has red hair.
   ----

6 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentence:

اختر الصفة الصحيحة لتكمل الجمل،

1. Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised) / surprising to see you!
2. The children feel bored / boring when there is nothing to do.
3. His birthday party was excited / exciting. It was a lot of fun.
4. I'm really interested / interesting in Ancient Egypt.
5. I was really tired / tiring last night. I finished my homework late.
6. The results of the students' last test are surprised / surprising.



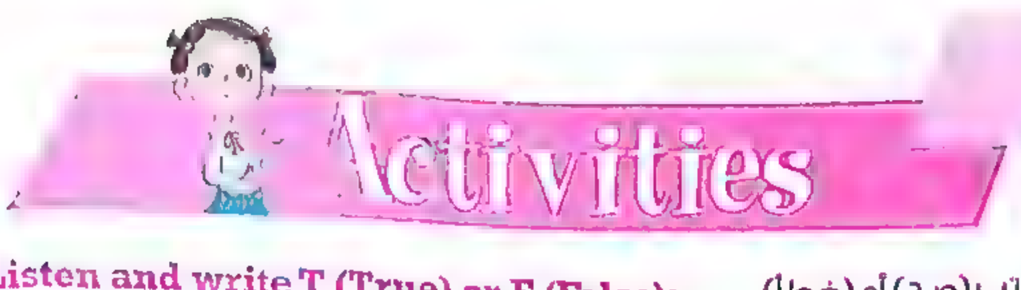
7 Read the text. Choose the correct word, a, b, or c

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series ① ---- (a) -- is popular with people of all age groups. It's ② -------- because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world ③ -------- humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

The series tells the story of a boy called Frey ④ ----- wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy ⑤ ----- finds life on Wanda ⑥ ----------.

He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship ⑦ ------ is traveling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm ⑧ --------- to see what happens next!

1- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
2- (a) interesting	(b) interested	(c) interest
3- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
4- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
5- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
6- (a) bored	(b) bore	(c) boring
7- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
8- (a) exciting	(b) excited	(c) excite



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): اسلمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Omar is a teacher.		
2	Omar likes science.		
3	Omar likes to play basketball.		
4	Omar plays football in the playground.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 This is the school	a. which my father bought.
2 Amr is my friend	b. interested in science.
3 I'm really	c. his birthday.
4 I have nice shoes	d. where I learn.
	e. who helps me do homework.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. This is the library .... I read books.
   a who b which c where d when
2. Hamza is the boy .... is my best friend.
   a which b who c when d where
3. Are these the clothes .... you want to take on holiday?
   a where b who c which d when
4. I was really .... last night.
   a tired b tiring c tire d tyre
5. I'm really .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a interested b interesting c interest d interests

6. This is my uncle .... visits us every Friday.

a where b what c who d which

7. I like the food .... my mother cooks.

a where b which c why d who

8. This is the bookshop .... I buy the notebooks.

a when b where c what d who

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. Ahmed is a boy .... (which) plays tennis with me.
2. This is the room .... (who) I put my clothes.
3. The film was .... (bored), so I didn't want to watch it again.
4. The laboratory is a place .... (who) students study science.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. which - insects - Bees - are - make - honey. ....
2. buildings - are - proud - We - of - our - new. ....
3. birthday - party - was - His - exciting. ....
4. was - really - I - tired - last night. ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- hani doesn t like maths ....
2- where s the playground, Leila ....

7 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your school

classrooms - playground

....

....

....



Lesson 3 ⭐ Hare gets scared



Key vocabulary



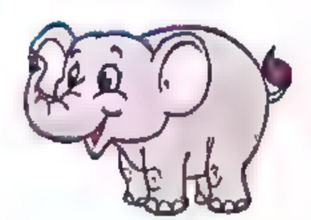
استمع إلى المفردات:



hare أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)



monkey قرد



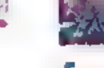
elephant فيل



mouse فأر

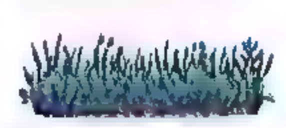


mice فئران





forest غابة



grass حشائش



stomach معدة





Other words كلمات أخرى

suddenly	فجأة
noise	ضوضاء
voice	صوت
quickly	بسرعة
both	كلاهما
help	مساعدة
finally	في النهاية



Adjectives صفات

sunny	مشمس
loud	عالٍ - مرتفع (للصوت)
scared	مرعوب
afraid	خائف
delicious	لذيذ
strong	قوي
brave	شجاع
angry	غاضب
clever	ذكي / ماهر

Help your child to talk about animals in the forest. ساعد طفلك أن يتحدث عن حيوانات الغابة.



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
remember	يتذكر	remembered
move	يتحرك	moved
shout	يُصيح	shouted
cry	يبكى	cried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
lie	يرقد	lay
get to	يصل إلى	got to
speak	يتحدث	spoke
come in	يدخل	came in
go back	يعود	went back
tell	يخبر	told
run away	يهرب	ran away

Study the following

1. It's a sunny day.
   - إنه يوم مشمس.
2. Her stomach makes a loud noise.
   - معدتها تتسبب فى ضوضاء عالية.
3. If you come in, I'll eat you.
   - إذا دخلت، سوف آكلك.
4. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her.
   - الحيوان الذى بمنزلها يريد أن يأكلها.
5. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend monkey lives.
   - تجرى الأرنبة البرية إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها القرد الذكى.
6. There is an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!
   - هناك حيوان فى منزلى، ويريد أن يأكلنى.
7. I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal.
   - أنا أكبر وأقوى وأشجع حيوان.
8. Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out.
   - يُفتح باب الأرنبة البرية ويخرج منه فأر صغير.
9. Everybody knows elephants are afraid of mice.
   - يعرف الجميع أن الأفيال تخاف من الفئران.
10. Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrot.
   - تدخل الأرنبة البرية فى النهاية لتأكل الجزرة الخاصة بها.



1 Listen and read the story. Who is in Hare's house?

استمع واقرأ القصة. من بداخل منزل "الأرنبة البرية"؟







نص الاستماع

It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly(1), her stomach makes a loud noise(2).
Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!
Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops.
What is that noise? Something is moving inside(3) Hare's house!
"Is somebody there?" asks Hare.
"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.
Hare is very surprised(4). Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."
Hare is very scared(5). The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest(6) where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks(7) interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious(8)."

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!" "Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody(9) can eat me!"

Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside(10). "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!(11) "Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away(12).

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?" Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!" The all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

Arabic Meaning

١- فجأة
٢- ضوضاء
٣- داخل
٤- مندهش
٥- مرعوب
٦- غابة
٧- يبدو
٨- لذيذ
٩- لا أحد
١٠- بالداخل
١١- فئران
١٢- يهرب



2 Read again and put the sentences in order 1-10:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع الجمل فى الترتيب من ١ الى ١٠.

a. Monkey becomes scared. [ ]

b. Hare becomes scared. [ ]

c. Hare feels hungry. [1]

d. Hare eats some carrots. [ ]

e. Hare asks Monkey for help. [ ]

f. Hare and Monkey ask Elephant for help. [ ]

g. Elephant sees a mouse. [ ]

h. Mouse says she is sorry. [ ]

i. Elephant runs away. [ ]

j. Hare hears a noise inside her house. [ ]

3 Who says each thing in the story? Read and write the names.

من قال الشئ فى القصة؟ اقرأ واكتب الأسماء.

Elephant - Hare - Monkey - Mouse

1. "Is somebody there?" asked ------ Hare ------------------------
2. "There's an animal in my house," said ------------------------
3. "An animal? Let's go and see," said ------------------------
4. "I'll eat you if you come in," said ------------------------
5. "I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world," said ----------
6. "Are you angry?" said ------------------------





- سوف ندرس فى هذا الدرس الصوتين / æ / و / ʌ /

short (a) / æ / , short (u) / ʌ /

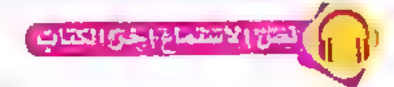
- الصوت /æ/ يسمى (short a) ينطق مثل كلمة cat - hat ويمثل هذا الصوت الحرف (a)

- الصوت /ʌ/ يسمى (short u) وينطق مثل cut ويمثل هذا الصوت الحروف (u أو o)

وفيما يلى تصنيف الكلمات حسب الصوت:

short (a) /æ/	الصوت / æ / القصير	short (u) /ʌ/	الصوت / ʌ / القصير
cat	قطة	cut	يقطع
track	ممشى / مضمار	truck	شاحنة
hat	قبعة	hut	كوخ
bag	حقيبة	bug	حشرة
stack	ساق النبات	stuck	عالق (محشور) / لصَق
ankle	كاحل (قدم)	uncle	عم / خال
animal	حيوان	hungry	جوعان
angry	غاضب	funny	مضحك
happy	سعيد	come	يدخل
		nuts	مكسرات
		duck	بطة
		honey	عسل
		brush	فرشاة
		onion	بصلة

4 Listen and circle the word you hear: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة:



1. hut / hat
2. bug / bag
3. stuck / stack
4. uncle / ankle

5 Is the sound the same as cat or cut? Listen and check:

هل الصوت مثل (cat) أو (cut) استمع وتأكد:

	cat	cut
1. animal	√	
2. hungry		
3. stomach		
4. funny		
5. angry		
6. come		

6 Listen, read, and repeat:

استمع واقرأ وردد:

- لاحظ الصوتين /ʌ/, /æ/ فى الكلمات الاتية:

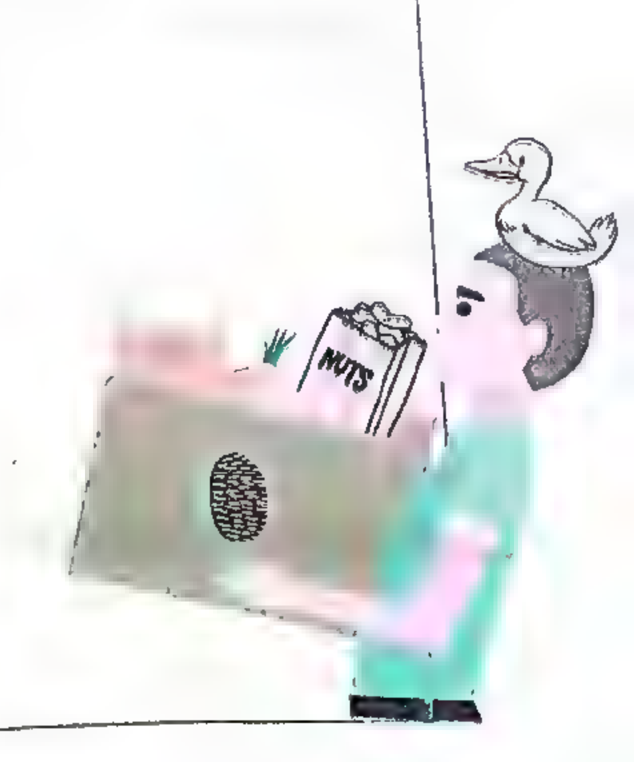
Happy Harry has some nuts.

Happy Harry has some nuts and a duck.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,
and some honey.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,
some honey, and a brush.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,
some honey, a brush, and an onion.







Estimating numbers تقريب الأرقام

١- عند تقريب العدد العشرى إلى اقرب رقم:

- إذا كان الرقم المطلوب تقريبه اكبر من 5 او 50 أو 500 .... يقرب الرقم إلى الرقم الأعلى اما إذا كان اصغر من أو يساوى 4 / 49 / 499 يتم تقريبه إلى الرقم الاصغر فمثلاً:

- عند تقريب الرقم 2.66 إلى اقرب رقم فإن العدد 0.66 اكبر من 0.50 ولذلك يقرب الرقم إلى واحد صحيح:

3.00 = 2.66

- عند تقريب الرقم 2.43 إلى اقرب رقم فإن العدد 0.43 اقل من 0.50 لذلك اقرب رقم هو:

2.00 = 2.34



1 Work with a partner and read the texts. Discuss اعمل مع زميلك واقرأ النص. ناقش:

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

يحتاج فصل حاتم الى الطلاء. قام طلاب الفصل بحساب كمية الطلاء المطلوبة. قاموا بقياس الحائط ودونوا القياسات. بحثوا على الانترنت ليعرفوا كم عبوة طلاء سيحتاجونها..

1. How do you think the students calculate how much paint they need?
2. How many liters of paint will they have left over?

Classroom wall measurements
Wall = h 2.66 m x w 7.95 m
الحائط = 2.66 م ارتفاع x 7.95م عرض



When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number: 2.66 → 3.00 3.95 → 4.00 نقرب الارقام كما درسنا بالاعلى

2 Round these measurements up or down to the nearest whole number

قرب هذه الأرقام لأقرب عدد صحيح:

1. 2.03 m ______________ 2. 12.96 m ______________ 3. 1.11 m ______________

To estimate how much paint they need, the students round their measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint:
2.66 (→ 3.00) x 7.95 (→ 8.00) = 24 m^2 - لاحظ أن كل رقم تم تقريبه لأقرب عدد صحيح:
Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (44 square meters) to cover 42 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

كل عبوة تغطى ٢٢م٢، لذلك سوف يحتاج التلاميذ إلى عبوتين (٤٤م٢) لدهان (٤٢م٢). سوف يكون لديهم على الأقل ٢٠ لتر متبقين.



Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):
استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 Amr likes vegetables.		
2 Amr doesn't like carrots.		
3 Amr is scared of dogs.		
4 Amr likes bananas.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words:
أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

strong - do - biggest - elephant

Ahmed : Do you like animals?

Marawan: Yes, I ❶ ------------------------------------.

Ahmed : What's the ❷ ------------------------------ animal?

Marawan: It's the ❸ ------------------------------------.

Ahmed : Is it ❹ ------------------------------------?

Marawan: Yes, It's.

3 Read and complete:
اقرأ واكمل:

smallest - biggest - clever - eats

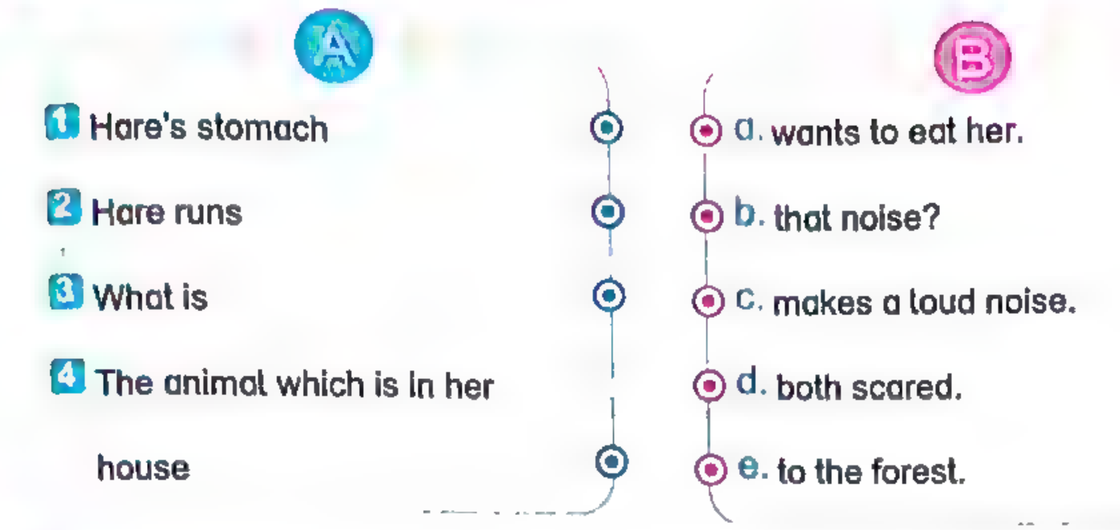
There are lots of animals in the forest. The elephant is the ❶ ------------ animal. The mouse is the ❷ ------------ animal. Monkeys are ❸ ------------. They play everywhere. We all like to see these animals.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة



4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Hare's stomach	a. wants to eat her.
2 Hare runs	b. that noise?
3 What is	c. makes a loud noise.
4 The animal which is in her house	d. both scared.
	e. to the forest.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. hungry - I'm - love - I - and - to - eat. ------------------------------
2. sunny - a - It's - day. ------------------------------
3. moving - is - Something - Hare's - house - inside. ------------------------------
4. is - Hare - surprised - very. ------------------------------
5. is - There - an - animal - house - my - in. ------------------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب أخر الوحدة

Your favorite animal

Guiding questions

1- What is this animal ?
2- Where does this animal live ?

Lessons 4&5 Writing & Project



استمع الى المفردات:

Key vocabulary



lizard سحلية



fish سمكة



cat قطة

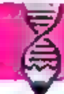


bird طائر

pet	حيوان أليف
fur	فرو
claw	مخلب

space	مساحة
well-being	رفاهية / سعادة / منفعة
points	نقاط

Adjectives صفات



calm	هادئ
clean	نظيف
positive	إيجابي
negative	سلبي
friendly	ودود / عطوف
independent	مستقل / يعتمد على نفسه

soft	ناعم / لين
nice	جميل
true	حقيقي
sharp	حاد
happy	سعيد

 Help your child to know about pets. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن الحيوانات الأليفة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pet	يُدلل	petted	keep	يحتفظ بـ / يربي	kept
touch	يلمس	touched	think	يعتقد	thought

Study the following

1. Cats are my favorite animals. - القطط هي الحيوانات المفضلة لي.
2. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch.
   - هم حيوانات جميلة بفرو ناعم تحب أن تلمسه.
3. They are clean and calm animals. - هم حيوانات هادئة ولطيفة.
4. They like people, but they are independent. - يحبون الناس ولكنهم يحبون الاستقلال.
5. You don't need to take them for a walk. - لا تحتاج لتأخذهم للتمشية.
6. It's true that cats have sharp claws and teeth.
   - من الحقيقي أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة.
7. They only use them when they are scared.
   - يستخدموهم فقط (المخالب) عندما يكونوا خائفين.
8. People also say when you pet a cat, it makes you happy.
   - يقول الناس أنك عندما تدلل قطة، ذلك يجعلك سعيدًا.
9. They are good for your well-being, too. - هم جيدين (القطط) لرفاهيتك وسعادتك أيضًا.

Language Focus قواعد لغوية

⦿ نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين فكرتين أو جملتين أو كلمتين بينهما تناقض أو شيء سلبي والآخر إيجابي أو جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية كما بالأمثلة.

1. I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.
2. My new school is great, but it's far from my house.
3. Dalia is polite and clever but she isn't friendly.

- هنا الأفكار متناقضة ولذلك استخدمنا but للتعبير عن هذا التناقض.

1 Look at the pets. Write the words: انظر إلى الحيوانات الأليفة. اكتب الكلمة.

bird - cat - fish - ~~lizard~~

1 

lizard

2 

3 

4 

2 Hani has to write about the best animal to keep as a pet. Read his notes. Decide which are positive (P) and which are negative (N)

هاني يكتب عن الحيوان الأليف المفضل له. اكتب بجوار كل كلمة (P) للإيجابي (N) للسلبي:

Cats as pets			
calm (P)	usually friendly	have soft fur	beautiful
clean	independent	have sharp claws and teeth	petting a cat makes you happy

Cats Are the Best Pets

القطط أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة:

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

استمع إلى النص:



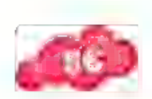
3 Join these phrases to make single sentences. Use but:

اربط العبارات لعمل جمل. استخدم but.

1. I like most types of fruit. I don't like mangoes.

   I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.

2. We want to go to the beach. It's raining today.
3. Lizards make good pets. It's difficult to find food for them.
4. My new school is great. It's far from my house.
5. Five-a-side football is an exciting sport. It takes a lot of time to practice it.





1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Fatma has a ....
2. The dog has sharp .... and teeth.
3. Fatma takes her dog for a .... every weekend.
4. The dog is calm and ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Cats are my	a. to take them for a walk.
2 You don't need	b. sharp claws and teeth.
3 Cats have	c. they are independent.
4 They like people but	d. you happy.
	e. favorite animals.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cats are my best ....
   a fruit b vegetables c pets d plants
2. When cats use their claws, they are very ....
   a scare b scared c happy d friendly
3. I like pizza .... I don't like pasta.
   a but b to c too d so
4. Cats are good .... your well-being.
   a if b for c at d in

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. beautiful - Cats - are - soft - with - fur. ------------------------------
2. are - clean - and - They - calm. ------------------------------
3. good - are - well-being - They - your - for. ------------------------------
4. makes - you - a cat - you - When - it - happy -pet. ------------------------------

5 Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة:

مجاب أخر الوحدة

claws - pet

To your friend Hazem to tell her about cats.
Your name is Maged and your email address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hazem@yahoo.com.

New Message

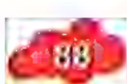
To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i don t like mangoes - ------------------------------
2. which animal does doaa like ------------------------------





Review

Key vocabulary


hare
أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)


monkey قرد


elephant فيل


mouse فأر


mice فئران


forest غابة



grass حشائش


stomach معدة


lizard سحلية


fish سمكة


cat قطة


bird طائر

laboratory	معمل
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي
equipment	معدات
experiments	تجارب علمية
pet	حيوان أليف

Gymnasium = Gym	صالة ألعاب رياضة
fountain	نافورة
laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
well-being	منفعة / سعادة / رفاهية

Adjectives صفات



nervous	متوتر
calm	هادئ
shy	خجول
polite	مؤدب

organized	منظم
clever	ماهر – شاطر
messy	فوضوي / غير منظم
kind	عطوف

Help your child revise Unit 2. ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
offer	يعرض	offered	show	يعرض/ يبين	showed
borrow	يستلف/ يستعير	borrowed	feel	يشعر	felt
cry	يبكي	cried	take place	يحدث	took place
pet	يُدلل	petted	lie	يرقد	lay

Language Focus قواعد لغوية

• Relative clauses ضمائر الوصل

1 who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذى / التى للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتى للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل فى الجملة.

- Sarah is the girl who always wins the race.

2 which

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذى / التى لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) فى الجملة.

- This is the picture which I draw.

3 where

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن فى الجملة.

- This is the building where we do physical education.

الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشيئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص كما بالمثال :

- I am excited. انا متحمس.

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيئ المسبب للشعور كما بالمثال :

- The football game is exciting. كرة القدم لعبة مثيرة. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 2

My school

① My school is very big. It has a lot of buildings. I play football in the playground. I go to the IT building to use computers. I can borrow laptops. Students can go to the Gym. Students can play basketball and tennis. We use the Gym for physical education lessons. Mr Amr is a teacher who helps us in the garden. I like him very much.

Lesson 3

My favorite animal

② My favorite animal is the monkey. I like to play with the monkeys. They are very clever. They eat nuts and bananas. I like to see them in the zoo. They are very funny. Monkeys play everywhere. They like to play with people. When the monkeys start to play, the people laugh. Monkeys want people to play with them. I'm happy to see the monkeys.

Lessons 4 & 5

③ **New Message**

To	hazem@gmail.com	**Cc Bcc**
From	maged@gmail.com	
Subject	Cats	

Dear Hazem,
How are you? I want to tell you about cats. Cats are my favorite animals. They are the best pets. I have a pet cat. Cats are calm and clean. They are independent. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They have sharp teeth and claws. They use them when they are scared. I give my cat good food. I like it very much.

Yours
Maged

Al Azhar Test

④ I'm proud of my school. My school is very big. It has many classrooms. I use the computer in the IT building. My school has laboratories for science lessons. I play football in the playground.

Activity Unit 2

Animals in the forest

⑤ There are a lot of animals in the forest. The lion is the king of the forest. It is the strongest animal. It eats meat. The elephant is the biggest animal. It eats leaves and grass. The giraffe is the tallest animal. It eats leaves. The monkey is the funniest animal. It eats nuts and bananas.



Al-Azhar Test



الأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mahmoud loves .... (dogs - cats - monkeys)
2. Cats are .... and calm animals. (clean - dirty - noisy)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

cat - do - have

A : What's your favorite animal?

B : It's the ....

A : Do you .... one?

B : Yes, I ....

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Samir and his friends went to the zoo yesterday. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the monkey and the elephant. They liked them very much. The monkey was funny. The elephant is the biggest animal. They had a nice time.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Samir and his .... went to the zoo. (friends - brothers - sisters)
2. They went to the zoo .... (last week - last year - yesterday)
3. Samir and his friends saw a lot of .... (birds - cats - animals)
4. The monkey is .... (bad - funny - tall)
5. The elephant is the .... animal. (thinnest - biggest - smallest)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. These are the shoes .... I wear to school.

a which b where c who

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. Sarah is very .... She likes talking to people.

ⓐ bad ⓑ friendly ⓒ angry

3. Mr Ahmed is the teacher .... runs after the football club.

ⓐ which ⓑ who ⓒ where

4. Cats are the best ....

ⓐ pets ⓑ birds ⓒ tools

5. The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.

ⓐ who ⓑ where ⓒ which

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. and - nervous - feel - shy - I - a bit .

....

2. have - laboratories - The - equipment - all.

....

3. the tall - girl - Laila - is - has - who - red hair.

....

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A place you are proud of

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

		True	False
1	Basel is in primary 5.		
2	Basel's friend is Hazem.		
3	Miss Hanan is the teacher of Arabic.		
4	Basel likes Miss Hanan.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

runs - eat - animals - monkey

Samir : What are you reading?

Magdy : I'm reading a story about ❶ ------------------------------.

Samir : What's it about?

Magdy : It's about a rabbit and a ❷ ------------------------------.

Samir : Tell me more.

Magdy : A lion wants to ❸ -------------------------- the rabbit, but the rabbit ❹ ---------- away.

Samir : I think it's an exciting story

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Hany is very polite.
2. Mr Amr is a teacher
3. I was really
4. This is the house

B

a. who teaches math.
b. where we live.
c. next to me.
d. He shows respect to everyone.
e. tired last night.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة



4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are a lot of animals in the forest. The biggest animals are the elephants. The elephants eat leaves and grass. **They** don't eat meat. There are monkeys. Monkeys eats nuts and bananas. They like to play on trees. There are lions. Lions are the strongest animals. They eat meat. They are brave animals. There are giraffes. They are the tallest animals. All these animals live together in the forest.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Monkeys eat bananas and ....

a meat b nuts c plastic d wood

2. The underlined word "They" refers to ....

a lions b elephants c monkeys d rabbits

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What do lions eat? ....

4. Where do monkeys like to play? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like most types of vegetables, ... I don't like potatoes.

a to b too c but d of

2. My friend is very .... He is good at math.

a bad b clever c angry d hungry

3. An ostrich is a big bird .... can't fly.

a who b where c why d which

4. This is my friend .... plays football with me.

a which b where c why d who

5. Ahmed is .... because he has a test tomorrow.

a shy b polite c nervous d organized

6. Hazem is .... He always gets a hundred out of hundred.

a messy b clever c bad d shy

7. We have the science lesson in the ....

a playground b bathroom c garden d laboratory

8. This is the place ....students play football.

a where b which c who d what

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

مل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. Alexandria is a city .... (which) we spend the summer holiday.
2. This is my school .... (who) I learn subjects.
3. The children were so .... (excite) when they heard the good news.
4. Cats are animals .... (where) are usually friendly.

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

رتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. really - I'm - in - interested - Egypt - Ancient. ....
2. football - The - is - exciting - game. ....
3. your - What's - pet - favorite? ....
4. does - What - Basel - to - share - offer -Hazem - with? ....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

تب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Animals in the forest

Guiding questions

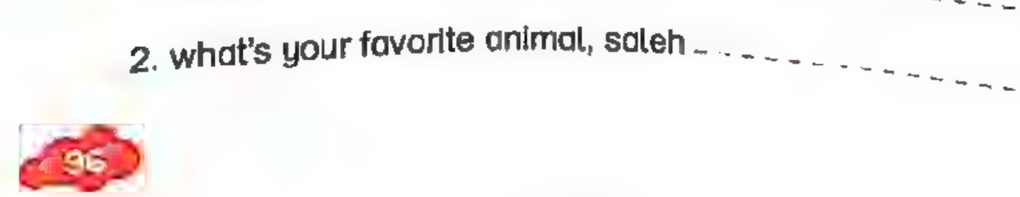
1. What are these animals ?
2. What do they eat ?

....
....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following:

ع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. this is the ahmed Zewail building ....
2. what's your favorite animal, saleh ....







Vacation plans







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن عمل خطط الأجازة.

2. Talk about facts using clauses with if or when.

- يتحدث الطالب عن حقائق باستخدام عبارات بـ if أو when .

3. Talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.

- يتحدث الطالب عن شيء ما يحدث باستخدام حروف جر الزمن.

4. Read and listen to determine the central message.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع ليحدد الرسالة الرئيسية (درس إخلاقي).

5. Practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.

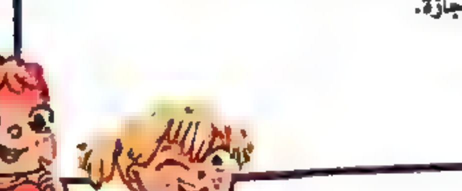
- يتدرب الطالب على نطق أصوات الحروف الساكنة /w/ and /v/ في بداية الكلمات.

6. Write a blog post about a place you like visiting.

- يكتب الطالب منشور في مدونة عن مكان يحب زيارته.

7. Research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وكتيب عن المكان المخصص للاجازة.









Let's go quad biking on Tuesday





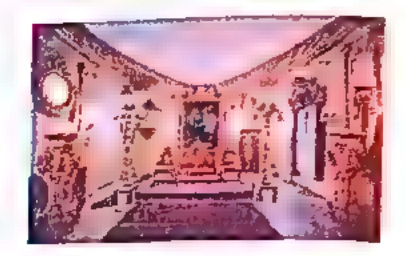




visit the museum
يزور المتحف



take photos
يلتقط صور



the Manial Palace Museum
متحف قصر المنيل



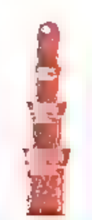
go quad biking in the desert
يركب دراجات رباعية في الصحراء

Activities
أنشطة





ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الرعب (في الملاهي)



climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق مئذنة بوابة زويلة



explore the souks
يستكشف الأسواق



vacation	أجازة
first	أولًا
school project	مشروع مدرسي
in about 30 minutes	في خلال ٣٠ دقيقة
view	مشهد / منظر

the theme park	الملاهي
the sunset	غروب الشمس
outside	خارج
top	قمة
Like what?	مثل ماذا؟

Help your child to learn about new activities.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن أنشطة جديدة.







excited about	متحمس بخصوص
interesting	شيق / رائع
difficult	صعب

cool	رائع
great	عظيم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
visit	يزور	visited
arrive	يصل	arrived
climb	يتسلق	climbed
explore	يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come	يأتي	came
take	يستغرق(وقتًا) / يلتقط	took
ride	يركب	rode

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Suggestion الإقتراح

1- Let's + inf (فعل فى المصدر) .... هيا بنا .... .

2- Why don't we + inf (فعل فى المصدر)....? لماذا لا نفعل ....؟

◉ والرد بالموافقة: -Good idea. فكرة رائعة.

◉ والرد بالرفض: -No, thanks. لا شكرا.

- Let's plan some activities for the trip. - Good idea.
- Why don't we try new places? - Okay, cool.

Study the following

1. I'm excited about our vacation. - أنا متحمس لأجازتنا.
2. Why don't we try new places? - لما لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟
3. There are lots to see there. - هناك الكثير من الأشياء يمكن أن تراها هناك.
4. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. - يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولا.
5. There are some places outside Cairo that look interesting. - يوجد أماكن خارج القاهرة تبدو رائعة.



6. We can take photos for my school project.

- نستطيع أن نلتقط صور لمشروعى المدرسى.

7. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

- هيا نذهب أيضًا إلى الملاهى ونركب قطار الرعب!

8. What else can we do?

- ماذا أيضا يمكن أن نفعل؟

9. We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.

- يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في صحراء الجيزة.

10. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

- إذا اخذنا الاتوبيس، سنصل خلال ٣٠ دقيقة تقريبًا.

11. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful

- الأمر صعب لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل.

12. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila Minaret.

- هيا نتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة.

13. We can explore the souks! They're near the Minaret.

- نستطيع أن نستكشف الأسواق! هم بجانب المئذنة.

1 Listen and read. Which two cities do the boys mention?

استمع واقرأ. أى مدينتين ذكرها الأولاد؟

استمع إلى النص!

Samer : I'm excited about our vacation(1) this week, Basel.

Basel : Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

Samer : Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum(2) first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

Basel : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park(3) and ride on a rollercoaster(4)!

Samer : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Basel : Like what?




Arabic Meaning

١- أجازة

٢- متحف قصر المنيل

٣- الملاهى

٤- يركب قطار الرعب

Samer : We can go quad biking[5] in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Basel : Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

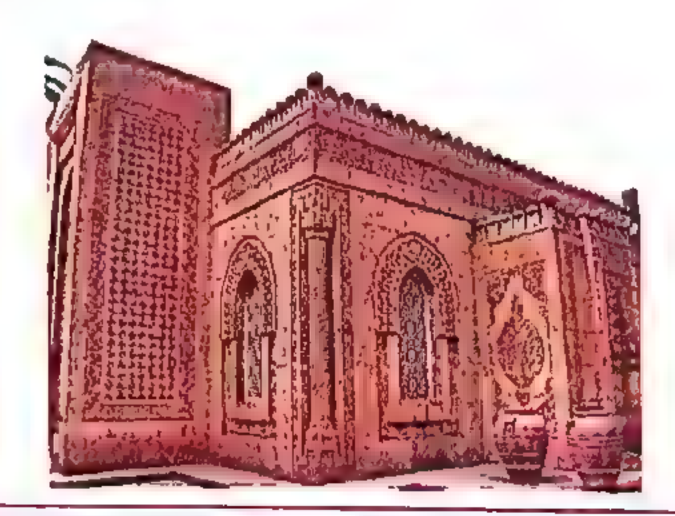
Basel : Yes. What else can we do?

Samer : Let's climb the Bab Zuweila Minaret[6] on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

Basel : Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the souks[7]! They're near the Minaret.

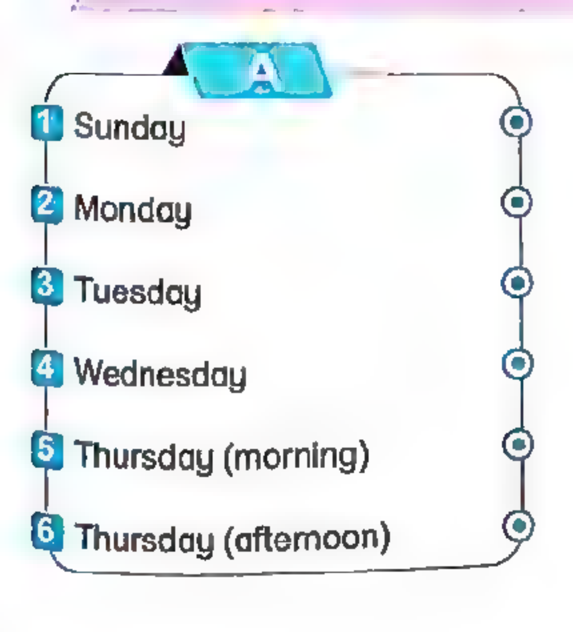
Samer : Great! Cairo, here we come!

٥- يركب درجات رباعية
٦- مئذنة باب زويلة
٧- تستكشف الأسواق



2 Listen again. Match the days to the activities:

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى، صل أيام الأسبوع بالأنشطة:



A

1. Sunday
2. Monday
3. Tuesday
4. Wednesday
5. Thursday (morning)
6. Thursday (afternoon)

B

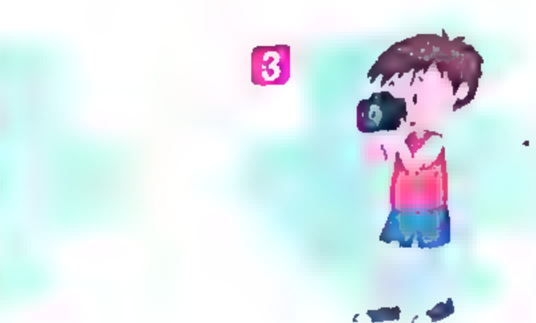
a. go quad biking in the desert
b. visit the Manial Palace Museum
c. ride on a rollercoaster
d. explore the souks
e. take photos for the school project
f. climb the Bab Zuweila minaret

3 Look and write expressions a-f from Exercise 2 under photos 1-6:

انظر واكتب التعبيرات من (a-f) من تمرين (٢) تحت الصور من 1 - 6 :

1


explore the souks

2, 3


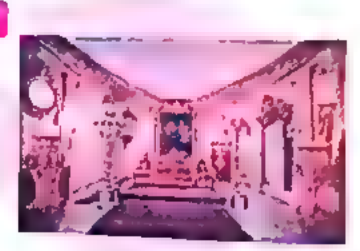
....

4


....

5


....

6


....

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

- When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.

يبدو وادى النيل على شكل مروحة (يد) عندما تنظر اليه من الاعلى ويبدو عريض فى الشمال حيث يتسع فى الدلتا ، ويبدو ضيق فى الجنوب حيث يمر بين منحدرات الصحراء .



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Sherif is from Cairo.		
2	Sherif took photos at the museum.		
3	Sherif saw the Nile in Cairo.		
4	Sherif's vacation was amazing.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

rollercoaster - theme - cool - come

Sameh : Where are you going?

Ayman : I'm going to the ❶ ------------------------------ park.

Sameh : Can I ❷ ------------------------------ with you?

Ayman : Yes, let's ride on the ❸ ------------------------------.

Sameh : Okay, ❹ ------------------------------.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Why don't we .... new places?

   a trying b tried c try d trys

2. Let's go quad .... in the Giza desert.

   a swimming b biking c playing d running

3. We can .... on a rollercoaster.

   a jump b climb c ride d explore

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila ....

a bike
b theme
c minaret
d lake

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

(A)	(B)
1 There are lots of	a. explore the souks.
2 In the morning, we can	b. excited about our vacation.
3 We can watch	c. the sunset over the city.
4 The view from the top	d. is beautiful.
	e. see in Cairo.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. vacation - excited - I'm - about - my ------------------------------------
2. can - go - biking - We - quad. ------------------------------------
3. do - What - we - else - can? ------------------------------------
4. climb - minaret - Zuweila - Let's - the Bab. ------------------------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A visit to the Bab Zuweila Minaret

the sunset - cool

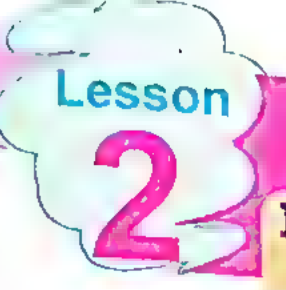
----

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

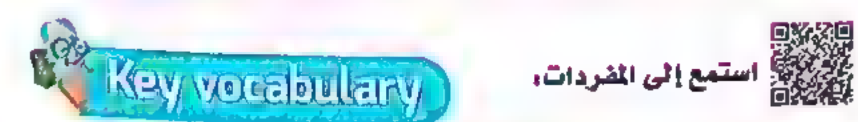
1. how do you get to giza ------------------------------------
2. i m happy to visit the park ------------------------------------





Part: 1

If we book the tour today, it's cheaper





استمع إلى المفردات.

online	عبر الانترنت
company	شركة
tour guide	مرشد سياحي
helmet	خوذة
cheaper	ارخص
discount	خصم
bank details	تفاصيل الحساب البنكي
credit card	كارت إئتمان
tour	جولة سياحية
wallet	محفظة
free	مجاني
the freezer	الفريزر (المجمد)
properly	بطريقة ملائمة
dictionary	قاموس
turn down	يخفض الصوت
block	يمنع / يحجب
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
press a button	يضغط على زر
dust	تراب / غبار
bake feteer	يخبز فطير
study tips	نصائح للمذاكرة
regular routine	روتين منتظم
healthy meal	وجبة صحية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
book	يحجز	booked
pass	يمرر / يناول	passed
switch off	يغلق جهاز	switched off
heat	يسخن	heated
die	يموت	died
turn on	يشغل	turned on
melt	يذوب	melted
concentrate	يركز	concentrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find	يجد	found
pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
say	يقول	said
sit	يجلس	sat
cost	يتكلف	cost
write down	يدون / يسجل	wrote down
hear	يسمع	heard

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك يتعلم كلمات جديدة.



Study the following

1. Study for about 30 minutes but no longer.
- ادرس لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة لا أكثر.
2. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate.
- لو حاولت أن تذاكر لساعات بدون راحة، لا تستطيع أن تركز.
3. When you have regular breaks, you work more.
- عندما نأخذ أوقات راحة منتظمة، نعمل أكثر.
4. It's helpful if you write down what you want to do in each time in your study.
- من المفيد إذا دونت ما تريده فى كل وقت في فترة مذاكرتك.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The zero conditional "If / When" الحالة الصفرية

If اذا / When عندما

١ - نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو الاشياء الصحيحة فى الحاضر.

٢ - يتكون من:

If / When	comma	main clause (result) العبارة الأساسية (النتيجة)
If we go by bus	,	it is quicker
Present simple مضارع بسيط		Present simple مضارع بسيط

If / When + present simple + present simple

جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

- When you look at their website, the information is here.
- If / When you heat sugar, it melts.

ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص فى الجزء الثانى من الجملة:

If / When + present simple + modal verb (can)

جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة بها فعل ناقص

الافعال الناقصة مثل: must / can

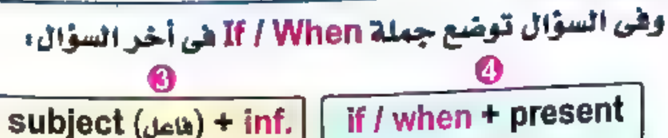
- If you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتى If / When فى أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتى فى وسط الجملة ولا يوضع comma:

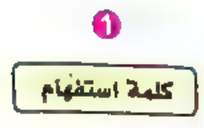
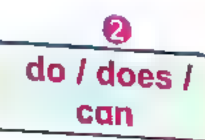
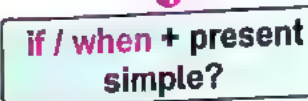
- If / When you press the button, the tablet switches off.
- The tablet switches off if you press this button.

Help your child to use The zero conditional "If ".

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم حالة "If" الصفرية.



٤- وفي السؤال توضع جملة If / When في أخر السؤال:

❶	❷	❸	❹
كلمة استفهام	do / does / can	subject (فاعل) + inf. مصدر الفعل	if / when + present simple?

- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
- Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل «يكون» verb to be في المضارع:

I ⟶ am He / She / It ⟶ is
We / You / They ⟶ are

- لاحظ فعل «يملك» verb to have في المضارع:

She / He / It ⟶ has
I / We / You / They ⟶ have

1 Listen to Samer's conversation with his dad. How much discount do they get for the quad bike trip today?

استمع لمحادثة سمير مع والده. كم قيمة الخصم التي حصلوا عليها لرحلة الدراجات الرباعية اليوم؟



استمع إلى النص:



Samer : Dad, here's the information I found online[1] about quad biking in the desert.

Dad : Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

Samer : The company is called Desert Adventures[2]. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look! The tour guide[3] will meet us at the hotel.

Dad : OK. What time will he meet us?

Samer : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

Dad : And what time do we get back?

Samer : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included[4] in the price. Should we take some water?

Dad : Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

Samer : It'll be a group of six.

Dad : I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets[5]. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

Samer : One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

Arabic Meaning

١- عبر الانترنت
٢- مغامرات الصحراء
٣- مرشد سياحي
٤- مشتمل/متضمن
٥- خوذات



Dad : Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions[6] so that you stay safe.

Samer : Yes, I will Dad.

Dad : Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

Samer : We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount[7].

Dad : Great. Can you pass me my wallet[8]? I need my credit card[9] to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

Samer : Sure Dad. Here you are.

٦- تعليمات
٧- خصم
٨- محفظة
٩- بطاقة إئتمان

2 Listen again. Circle the correct answer, a or b.

استمع مرة اخرى ، وضع دائرة على الاجابة الصحيحة، (a أو b)

1. The quad bike company is called
   a. Desert Adventures. b. Quad Adventures.
2. The guide will meet them in the hotel at
   a. 9 am b. 9.30 am
3. They should take
   a. some snacks for lunch. b. some water.
4. They'll be in a group of
   a. six. b. eight.
5. They have to
   a. know how to ride a quad bike. b. wear a helmet on the quad bike.
6. They decide to do the trip that lasts
   a. 45 minutes. b. one hour.
7. Samer should listen to the guide so that
   a. he knows what to do. b. he stays safe.
8. To pay for the tour, Samer's dad needs his
   a. bank details. b. credit card.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل بالشكل الصحيح للأفعال من بين الاقواس.

1. If you ......heat...... (heat) sugar, it ......melts...... (melt).
2. If you .... (feel) tired, you can .... (go) to bed early.
3. When the clouds .... (be) red, it .... (mean) there's dust in the sky.
4. My English always .... (get better) when I .... (study) the lessons again at home.
5. You can .... (tell) me if you .... (need) anything.

4 Put the words in order. Write the sentences in your notebook.

اكتب الكلمات الآتية فى الترتيب. اكتب الجمل فى كراستك.

1. buy / two T-shirts, / you / free / get / one / When / you

   When you buy two T-shirts, you get one free.

2. don't water / Plants / if / die / you / them

   ....

3. go / want / by bus. / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can

   ....

4. eat / too much cake. / stomach ache / I / if / I can get

   ....

5. we / it / my umbrella. / If / can / rains, / use

   ....

6. sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it. / When / she

   ....



5 **Use the prompts and if to complete the dialogs. Write the sentences in your notebook. Then listen and check:**

استخدم العبارة مع if لتكمل المحادثة. اكتب الجمل فى كراستك ثم استمع وتأكد:

1- **Hazem** : Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working.
Mom : The freezer / not work / you not close / the door / properly
The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the door properly.

2- **Leila** : Mrs Manal, can we use pencils in the test?
Teacher : No sorry, you can't. tell / me / now / you / not have / a black pen
....

3- **Karim** : What does this word mean, Sherif?
Sherif : I don't know. look it up / a dictionary / you / not know / a word
....

4- **Dad** : Please turn the music down, Rana. It's too loud!
Rana : But Dad, I / not can / hear / it / be / too low
....

5- **Selim** : What happens / you / block / a person / social media?
Dalia : You don't get any messages from them.
....

6 **Complete the text about study tips with the correct form of the verbs in the box.**

اكمل النص بنصائح دراسية بالشكل الصحيح للافعال فى القائمة:

check - concentrate - eat - finish - have - remember - try - work - write

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you .... regular breaks, you .... more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains .... better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you're hungry! If you .... a healthy meal at lunchtime, your can .... better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you .... down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can .... it off the list when you .... studying and feel proud!



Lesson 2 Part: 2 If we book the tour today, it's cheaper



استمع الى المفردات،



midnight	منتصف الليل	lunchtime	وقت الغداء
date	تاريخ اليوم	great news	اخبار رائعة
season	فصل من فصول السنة	sports	رياضة
Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	party	حفلة
science class	حصة العلوم	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضِ	Present مضارع	Past ماضِ
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	meet يقابل	met

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time
حروف جر الزمن

At - On - In

- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) بمعنى فى أو عند مع الاتى

At	at five o'clock- 4.30	مع الوقت
	at night- lunchtime- midnight	مع بعض اوقات اليوم
	at sunset - the moment- the same time	مع بعض الكلمات والتعبيرات
	at the airport	مع الاماكن الصغيرة

- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) بمعنى فى مع الاتى

On	on my birthday- school day	مع بعض الكلمات
	on Friday- Sunday	مع ايام الاسبوع
	on August 17th	مع التواريخ
	on the weekend	مع كلمة عطلة نهاية الاسبوع

- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى فى مع الاتى

In	in 2010 – in 2015	مع السنوات
	in the morning- in the afternoon	مع اوقات اليوم
	in summer- winter- fall- spring	مع فصول السنة
	in March- in October	مع الشهور
	in Cairo- Egypt	مع الاماكن الكبيرة

1 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام at , in or on.

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim in spring.
2. Let's meet outside the school .... 10:30 am.
3. We had a science class .... Monday.
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... July.
5. Great news! I'm having a party .... my birthday!
6. What did you do .... the weekend?







2 Listen. When do the students do these things? Complete the chart:

استمع. متى يفعل التلاميذ هذه الأشياء؟ أكمل الجدول:



استمع إلى النص:





Tapescript نص الاستماع

Hana : Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday . I do homework on Tuesday.

Youssef : Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday . I do homework on Thursday.

Mayar : Hello. My name's Mayar. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports . I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

Nader : Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

	get up	have breakfast	go to library	play sports	do homework
Hana		6:30			Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday
Youssef	7 o'clock			Saturday	
Mayar			Sunday pm		
Nader			–		every day



Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I usually get up .... 7 o'clock.
   a in b on c with d at
2. I was born .... 2010.
   a on b at c in d from
3. What .... if you block a person on social media?
   a happening b happen c happens d happened
4. .... down what you want to do in each time you study.
   a Write b Turn c Give d Block
5. We had an English class .... Friday.
   a at b on c in d for
6. Let's meet outside .... 9 o'clock.
   a for b of c on d at
7. When my cat sees a mouse, it .... to catch it.
   a trying b try c tries d tried
8. If people eat too much, they .... fat.
   a get b got c gets d getting
9. .... Nabil study well if he takes regular breaks?
   a Are b Do c Is d Does
10. .... you look at their website, the information is here.
   a Where b When c What d Which

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. When I ....(met) my friends, I always shake hands.
2. I went to Alexandria ....(in) the weekend.
3. What ....(you can) do if you have free time?
4. My friend John lives ....(at) England.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

breaks - up - concentrate - down

We should study for about thirty minutes. We can't ❶.................. if we study for hours. We work more when we have regular ❷.................. . It's good to write ❸.............. what you want to do in each time in your study. You should also eat a healthy meal at lunchtime.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. use - in - Can - the - we - pencils - test?

....

2. don't water - die - you - Plants - if - them.

....

3. about - Study - minutes - 30 - for.

....

4. you - sugar, - If - heat - melts - it.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. i play tennis at 3 o clock

....

2. how can you get to giza

....



Lesson 3

Fatima faces her fear



استمع الى المفردات:



face her fear	تواجه خوفها
breathe (d)	يتنفس
secret	سر
calmer	أهدأ
dome	قبة

lake	بحيرة
puddle	بركة
river	نهر
stream	جدول مائي



famous places	أماكن مشهورة
the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa	قبة أبو الهوا (جبل صخرى يقع على الضفة الغربية للنيل بأسوان)
great view	منظر رائع
afraid of	خائف من
heights	المرتفعات
white	شاحب
incredible	مذهل / مدهش
famous monument	آثار مشهورة

hill	تل
sunset	غروب الشمس
typical day	يوم نموذجي
a teenage girl	فتاة مراهقة
deer	غزال
a drink of water	شربة ماء
wolf	ذئب
clear	صافي
bear	دب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
disappoint	يحبط	disappointed
lift	يرفع	lifted
sparkle	يتلألأ	sparkled
reach	يصل إلى	reached
face	يواجه	faced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
feel	يشعر	felt
drink	يشرب	drank
show	يظهر / يبين	showed



Study the following

1. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. - إنها أول زيارة لأمل فى أسوان.
2. She is afraid of heights. - إنها خائفة من المرتفعات.
3. Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin. - لا تريد فاطمة أن تحبط ابنة خالتها.
4. She decides to face her fear. - تقرر أن تواجه خوفها.
5. Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. - تشعر فاطمة بهدوء أكثر. لقد رفعت رأسها لتنظر إلى المشهد.
6. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place. - تشعر بالفخر بأنها تعيش فى مكان رائع.
7. Little Deer runs through the forest. - يجرى الغزال الصغير فى الغابة.
8. Little Deer comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. - لقد وصل الغزال الصغير إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة وقرر التوقف لشرب الماء.
9. Wolf has a drink from the lake. - يشرب الذئب من البحيرة.
10. I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. - لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس البحيرة مثل الذئب
11. The river is cool and clear. - النهر رائع وصافى.
12. If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too! - إذا كان بإمكان الطائر الصغير أن يكون شجاعًا، فيمكنني أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا!
13. Little Deer feels happy and proud. - يشعر الغزال الصغير بالسعادة والفخر.

1 Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about? (✓)

انظر إلى الصور. ماذا تعتقد القصة عن؟

a. tall buildings ☐ b. a typical day for a teenage girl ☐

c. a visit to a famous monument ☐


استمع إلى النص:

1



Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

2



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it - there's a great view from there!"

Help your child to read the story to determine the central message "Fatima faces her fear".
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ليحدد الرسالة الرئيسية (درس أخلاقى).



3



Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

4



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

5



It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

6



Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

2 Read and listen again. Answer the questions. اقرأ واستمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

1. Who comes to visit Fatima?

   Her cousin Amal.

2. Why is Fatima not sure about the visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

   ....

3. Why do you think she decides to go?

   ....

4. When does she suggest they go to the dome?

   ....

5. Why does Amal take Fatima's hand and tell her to breathe slowly?

   ....

6. How does Fatima feel after she faces her fear?

   ....





Story



استمع إلى النص،



1 Listen and read the story. Where does Little Deer have a drink?

استمع واقرأ القصة. اين تناول الغزال الصغير المشروب؟

Little Deer in the Forest

Little Deer runs through[1] the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf[2]. Wolf has a drink from the lake.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear[3]. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

Arabic Meaning

١- خلال
٢- ذئب
٣- صافى
٤- جدول مائى
٥- يتلألأ
٦- بركة
٧- شجاع

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream[4]. The stream sparkles[5] in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink

from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!" Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle[6]. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

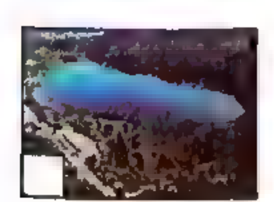
Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

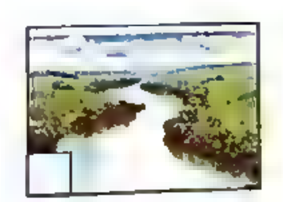
Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave[7], I can be brave, too!"

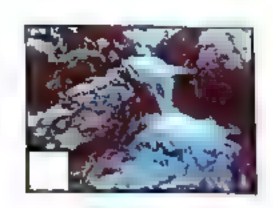
Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious! Little Deer feels happy and proud.

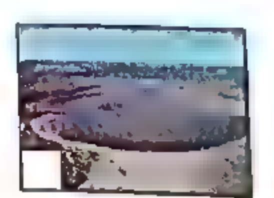
2 Listen and read again. Number the places in the order Little Deer comes to them.

استمع واقرأ مرة أخرى. رقم الاماكن بترتيب وصول الغزال الصغير لها.











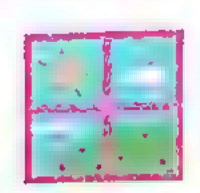


1 **Look and listen. Then listen again and repeat:**

انظر واستمع، ثم استمع مرة أخرى وكرر.

⊙ لاحظ نطق حرف /w/ حيث ينطق مثل حرف (و) فى اللغة العربية كما فى الكلمات لآتية:

Ww /w/ words

		
water مياة	wolf ذئب	window شباك
		
wet مبلل	whale حوت	west غرب
		
watch ساعة يد	walk يمشى	warm دافئ
		
white أبيض	wear يرتدى	web شبكة العنكبوت

لاحظ نطق حرف /v/ حيث نستخدم الاسنان العلوية والشفاه السفلية مع اخراج الهواء من الفم وتهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطق هذا الحرف:

Vv /v/ words

volcano بركان

violin اله الكمان

vegetables خضراوات

visit يزور

vase زهرية

van شاحنة

vest صديرى

veil حجاب

village قرية

vet طبيب بيطرى

2 Listen and circle the word you hear: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى تسمعها:



1- a wet b vet | 2- a veil b whale | 3- a vest b west

3 Listen. Complete the words with v or w: استمع واكمل الكلمات بـ v أو w:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1- ....alk	2- ....an	3- ....eb
4- ....isit	5- ....arm	6- ....ase
7- ....ater	8- ....indow	9- ....olcano

4 Listen, read, and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. The white wolf went for a walk with a woman wearing a watch.
2. I visited a very old village and bought a very nice violin.



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1. Hisham wasn't afraid of heights.		
2. They saw great views at the Pyramids.		
3. Hisham and Amged went to the Pyramids by car.		
4. Finally, Hisham and Amged climbed the mountain.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

fear - scared - heights - book

Yasser : Hi! Sherif. What about climbing the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?
Sherif : No, I can't. I'm afraid of ❶ ------------------------.
Yasser : You should face your ❷ ------------------------.
Sherif : That's right. I'll try. When will we go there?
Yasser : Next vacation, we will ❸ ------------------------ tickets online.
Sherif : I'm ❹ ------------------------ but I'll try.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You can open the .... it's very hot.
   a watch b window c wolf d west
2. My sister is wearing a ....
   a veil b vase c violin d volcano
3. Do you like eating .... ?
   a volcanoes b vegetables c villages d vans
4. Can you visit the .... of Abu Al-Hawa?
   a Dome b Wall c Minaret d Door
5. Noha is very scared. Her face is.................... .
   a brown b white c blue d pink

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

6. He is playing on the ....

a vest b veil c violin d vet

7. We should .... our fear of something.

a make b face c climb d lift

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. runs - Little - through - forest - Deer - the. ------------------------
2. her - decides - Fatima - fear - face - to. ------------------------
3. feels - She - proud - to live - place - this - in. ------------------------

5 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements about:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Little Deer in the forest مجاب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Heba to tell her about the story of Little Deer. Your name is Salwa and your email address is salwa15@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is heba26@gmail.com.

Guiding questions

1- Why does Little Deer stop?
2- What does he decide to do?

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

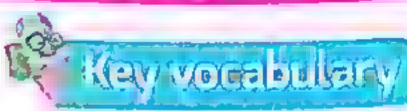
....

....





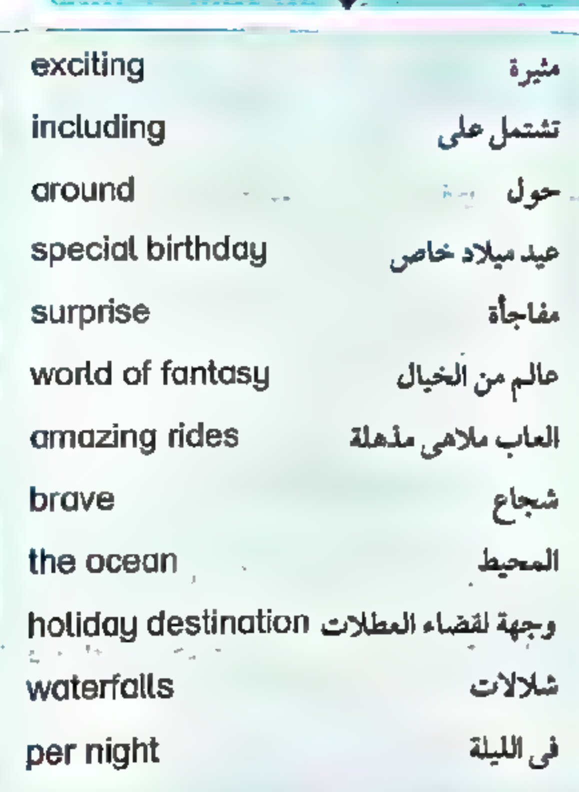
★ Writing
★ Project




استمع إلى المفردات:

fun	متعة
carnival	احتفال / مهرجان
theaters	مسارح
the simulation theater	مسرح المحاكاة

Other words



exciting	مثيرة
including	تشتمل على
around	حول
special birthday	عيد ميلاد خاص
surprise	مفاجأة
world of fantasy	عالم من الخيال
amazing rides	ألعاب ملاهي مذهلة
brave	شجاع
the ocean	المحيط
holiday destination	وجهة لقضاء العطلات
waterfalls	شلالات
per night	في الليلة

double room	غرفة لفردين
shows	عروض
stores	محلات
section	قسم
water rides	ألعاب ملاهي مائية
sound and light effects	تأثيرات الصوت والضوء
snowy mountains	جبال ثلجية
realistic	حقيقي
brochure	كتيب
Giza Square	ميدان الجيزة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

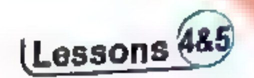
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
guess	يخمن	guessed
relax	يسترخي	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
feel	يشعر	felt
swim	يعوم	swam

Help your child to learn new words about places in Egypt. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مفردات جديدة عن أماكن في مصر



Study the following

1. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival.

- أنا مع عائلتى بسبب المفاجاه الخاصة لعيد ميلاد فى المهرجان.

2. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy.

- عندما تصل إلى الحديقة فانت فجاة تدخل فى عالم من الخيال.

3. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster and theatres where you can watch shows.

- يوجد العاب الملاهى الرائعة لكى تجربها مثل قطار الرعب والمسارح حيث تستطيع ان تشاهد عروض.

4. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater.

- فى الظهيرة أردنا انا وابى الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة.

5. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects.

- تجلس على مقعد وحولك شاشات كبيرة ويوجد مؤثرات الصوت والضوء.

6. And it feels like you're in different places around the world, snowy mountains, even under the ocean.

- وتشعر انك فى أماكن مختلفة حول العالم مثل جبال جليدية أو حتى تحت المحيط.

7. Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination.

- شرم الشيخ وجهة رائعة لقضاء العطلات.

8. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea.

- شرم الشيخ مدينة رائعة مزدحمة فى مصر بجوار البحر الأحمر.

9. There are lots of things to see and do. - يوجد الكثير من الأشياء يمكن أن تراها وتفعلها.

1 Read Nashwa's blog post. Answer the questions:

اقرأ تدوينة «نشوى» واجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Where is she?

----

2. Who is she with?

----

3. Why is she there?





Nashwa's blog BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



استمع إلى النص:

Tuesday June 3rd

All the fun of the Carnival!

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise (1) at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly (2) in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting (3). There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section (4) has nine rides including the Orient Train (5). We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet! In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater (6). You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world, snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic (7) - I can't wait! What a great birthday present (8) - thanks Mom and Dad!

Arabic Meaning

١- مفاجأة
٢- فجأة
٣- مثير
٤- قسم
٥- القطار الشرقى
٦- مسرح المحاكاة
٧- واقعية
٨- هدية





Lessons 4&5

2 Read the blog again. Put the activities in the correct order 1–3:

اقرأ التدوينة مرة أخرى. ضع الأنشطة فى الترتيب الصحيح من ١ - ٣:

a. simulation theater .... b. Orient Train 1 c. Waterfalls ride ....

Tip!

A blog post should have a title and date, and use informal language and first person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about their experiences. Bloggers often add photos to make their blogs more attractive.

تحتوى التدوينة على عنوان وتاريخ واستخدام لغة غير رسمية وضمائر للشخص المتكلم، وتشمل قصة شخصية وتعطى رأى كاتب التدوينة ومشاعره عن تجاربه. أصحاب التدوينات غالبا يضيفوا صور لجعل التدوينة أكثر جاذبية

Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination!



استمع إلى النص:





نص الاستماع

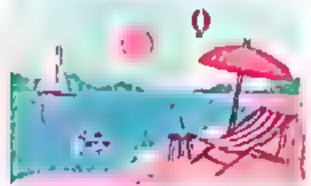
For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting(1) and busy(2) town in Egypt by the Red Sea(3). There are lots of things to see and do.

Arabic Meaning

١- رائعة
٢- مزدحمة
٣- البحر الأحمر
٤- يسترخى
٥- دير سانت كاترين

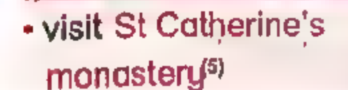
- swim in the sea
- relax(4) on the beach





- go quad biking in the desert





- visit St Catherine's monastery(5)



- eat good food

Take Let's Ride! bus from Giza Square every afternoon at 3 pm for LE 500 only!

Help your child to learn how to write a blog.
Help your child learn about Sharm El-Sheikh.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب تدوينة.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مدينة شرم الشيخ.







Activities

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:



1. Alexandria is my .... destination.
2. You can .... at the beach.
3. Alexandria is an amazing and .... city.
4. You can swim in the ....

2 Read and complete:

إقرأ وأكمل:

dome - monastery - busy - relax

My teacher asked us to make a tourist brochure about a place we like visiting. I made a brochure about my favorite place, Sharm El-Sheikh. It's a ❶............ town in Egypt by the Red Sea. Tourists can do a lot of things in this town. They can go diving in the sea and ❷............ on the beach. They can visit St Catherine's ❸............ and go quad biking in the desert.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 The children's section	a. birthday present.
2 What a great	b. like the rollercoaster.
3 There are lots of	c. things to see and do.
4 There are amazing rides	d. has nine rides.
	e. explore the town.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. in - You - quad biking - the desert - go - can. -
2. want - the - I - to go - simulation - to - theater. -
3. is - an amazing - Sharm - destination - El-Sheikh - holiday. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

5 Write a blog of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Yasser about your visit to Sharm el-Sheikh. Your name is Essam. اكتب تدوينة من ٥٠ كلمة.

interesting - the Red Sea

Essam's blog

Friday August 7th

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. let s make a tourist brochure -
2. what can you see at sharm El-Sheikh -



Key Vocabulary


visit the museum
يزور المتحف


take photos
يلتقط صور


the Manial Palace Museum
متحف قصر المنيل


go quad biking in the desert
يركب دراجات رباعية فى الصحراء


ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الرعب


climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق على مئذنة بوابة زويلة

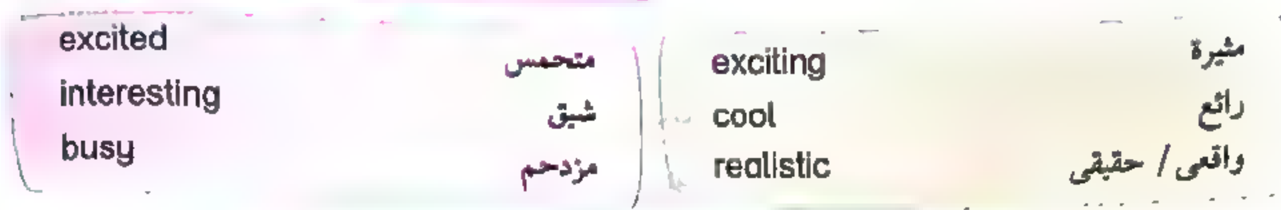

explore the souks
يستكشف الاسواق

Other words

vacation	أجازة
trip	رحلة
seats	مقاعد (ثابتة)
carnivals	إحتفالات / مهرجانات
activities	أنشطة
the sunset	غروب الشمس
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

world of fantasy	عالم من الخيال
the ocean	المحيط
waterfalls	شلالات
theaters	مسارح
water rides	العاب ملاهى مائية
heights	المرتفعات
forest	غابة





excited	متحمس	exciting	مثيرة
interesting	شيق	cool	رائع
busy	مزدحم	realistic	واقعى / حقيقى

Regular verbs	افعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past ماض	Present	مضارع	Past ماض
die	يموت	died	pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
book	يحجز	booked	choose	يختار	chose
concentrate	يركز	concentrated	take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The zero conditional "If" الحالة الصفرية

If لو / **When** عندما

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو الاشياء الصحيحة فى الحاضر.

٢- يتكون من:

1. **If / When + Present simple + Present simple.**
   جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط   جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

- If / When you heat sugar, it melts.

ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص فى الجزء الثانى من الجملة:

2. **If / When + present simple + model verb (can)**
   جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط +   جملة بها فعل ناقص

الافعال الناقصة مثل: **must / can**

- If you pass me the wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتى If / When فى أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتى فى وسط الجملة ولا يوضع comma.

- If / When you need anything , you can tell me.

- You can tell me if / when you need anything.

٤- وفى السؤال توضع جملة If / When فى آخر السؤال:

كلمة استفهام + can / do / does + subject (فاعل) + inf + if / when + present simple?

- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

- Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل «يكون» verb to be فى المضارع:

I ⟶ am　　He / She / It ⟶ is
We / You / They ⟶ are

- لاحظ فعل «يملك» verb to have فى المضارع:

She / He / It ⟶ has
I / We / You / They ⟶ have

---

2 Prepositions of time
حروف جر الزمن

١- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) بمعنى (فى) أو عند مع الوقت ومع كلمات:

. midnight, lunchtime / ..... o'clock

at ⟶ 3 o'clock, lunchtime, midnight /, weekend.

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) بمعنى (فى) مع أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ وبعض الكلمات :

on ⟶ Sunday, birthday, March 25 / weekend / school days

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى (فى) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وفترات النهار.

in ⟶ July, winter (spring - summer - fall), 2020, in the morning.

- لاحظ الآتى: مع فترات اليوم نستخدم in ما عدا at night.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to Texts

Lesson 1

A visit to the Bab Zuweila minaret

1. Last week I went to the Bab Zuweila minaret. My brother and I climbed the minaret. We watched the sunset over the city. Then, we explored the souks near the minaret and bought amazing things. That was cool. In the evening, we went home. We had a great time on our vacation.

Lesson 3

Little Deer in the forest

2. **New Message**

To	heba26@gmail.com
From	salwa15@yahoo.com
Subject	Tiger and Little Deer

Cc Bcc

Dear Heba,

I'm happy to write to you. I'd like to tell you about the story of Little Deer in the forest. Little Deer comes to a lake and stops for a drink of water. He sees a wolf. He thinks the wolf wants to eat him. He runs away. Finally he decide to be brave. He goes back to the lake and has a drink. I enjoyed this story. See you soon.

Love,

Salwa

Lessons 4&5

Your visit to Sharm el-Sheikh

3 Essam's blog — BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE  

Friday August 7th

Sharm El-Sheikh amazing town

Hi, I'm in Sharm El-Sheikh now. Yesterday we booked tickets online and went by plane. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. We will swim in the sea and relax at the beach. We can visit St Catherine's monastery. It's my favorite holiday destination. Do you think it's a nice place for vacation?



Al-Azhar Test

Rollercoasters

4 Rollercoasters are my favorite ride. I like riding them. I ride the rollercoaster with my father. My father always books tickets online. In the theme park, there are lots of rides. But if you are brave, you can ride the rollercoaster.

Activity - Unit 3

Your visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

5 I like going to Aswan. I can visit many amazing places there. I can go with my family. We can visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa and climb up the hill to it. There's a great view from there. At first, I feel scared but I face my fear and climb the hill.



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting .... (town - country - city)
2. There's St Catherine's .... (Museum - Monastery - Hill)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

park - Today - Where

A : Hi, when is your birthday?
B : -- is my birthday.
A : -- are you?
B : I'm at the -- in Giza City.

C- Reading

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

I'm Noha. I live in Cairo. Rasha is my cousin.She comes to visit me. It is the first time in Cairo. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. Rasha loves the Egyptian museum and the Cairo Tower.

1. Rasha is Noha's .... (aunt - sister cousin)
2. Noha lives in .... (Cairo - Aswan -Tanta)
3. It is Rasha's .... time in Cairo. (second - first - third)
4. Rasha wants to see all the famous .... in Cairo. (places - schools - farms)
5. Rasha loves the Egyptian ...... and the Cairo Tower. (pyramid - museum - park)

D- Usage

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. If we .... by bus, it is quicker.
   a goes   b went   c go
2. Sharm El-Sheikh is a busy town by the ....
   a Red Sea   b desert   c Nile

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3. We had a science class .... Monday.

a at   b on   c in

4. I study better when I .... a healthy meal.

a eating   b ate   c eat

5. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.

a in   b at   c on

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - the - The souks - near - minaret.

----

2. get - at - o'clock- up - I - seven.

----

3. Abu - is - the - Where - Dome - Al-Hawa - of?

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جُمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Rollercoasters

Activity on Unit 3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1. We should plan to go to good places.		
2. We don't need to choose a quiet place.		
3. We should think how to get to the place.		
4. We should think about the suitable time.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

tips - regular - healthy - concentrate

Omar : You look worried, Emad. Is something wrong?

Emad : I have a test tomorrow but I can't ❶ ....

Omar : Don't worry. I can give you some study ❷ ....

Emad : Okay. What should I do?

Omar : You should have ❸ .... breaks.

Emad : What else can I do?

Omar : You should have a ❹ .... meal at lunchtime.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You can go .... biking in the desert.
   - a) climb b) quad c) dive d) fly
2. The freezer .... if you don't close the door properly.
   - a) working b) doesn't work c) don't work d) worked
3. I traveled to Alexandria .... midnight.
   - a) for b) on c) in d) at
4. Noha is .... of heights, she can't climb the minaret.
   - a) excited b) afraid c) proud d) sure

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



5. I will visit Aswan .... February.

a on b at c in d of

6. Please, Hoda, turn the music down. It's too ....

a loud b quiet c easy d excited

7. I want to .... the souks and buy something for my mum.

a explore b climb c ride d take

8. If it .... , we can't go outside.

a rained b rain c rains d raining

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. I always visit Alexandria .... (on) the summer.
2. If she goes for a walk, she .... (take) her dog with her.
3. I was nervous .... (at) my first school day.
4. Grandma is always happy .... (where) we visit her.

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I'm excited	a. it's cheaper.
2 If we book the tour today,	b. great birthday present.
3 There's a great view	c. a drink of water.
4 Little Deer stops for	d. about our vacation
	e. from the hill.

6 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Emad and his brother Hany like going outside on their vacation. They visit many places in Cairo, Giza, Luxor and Aswan. One day Emad asked Hany to go to the Cairo Tower. At first Emad didn't want to go there because he was <u>afraid</u> of heights. Then, he decided to face his fear and go to the Cairo Tower. On Friday they got up early and went to the Cairo Tower by bus. From the Cairo Tower, Emad and his brother could see the great view of Cairo and the Nile. They were proud to live in Cairo.





Activity Unit 3

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "afraid" means ....

a scared b happy c sad d amazed

2. Emad and Hany saw the great view of the ....

a pyramids b Nile c minaret d museum

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How did Emad and Hany go to the Cairo Tower? ------------------------

4. Where do Emad and Hany live? ------------------------

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. go - to - Let's - park - theme - the. ------------------------

2. is - very - The - exciting - rollercoaster. ------------------------

3. does - have - Where - a drink - Little Deer? ------------------------

4. from - The - was - view - the minaret - great. ------------------------

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

Guiding questions

1- Where's the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?
2- What can you see at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

----

9 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i m having a party on tuesday. ------------------------

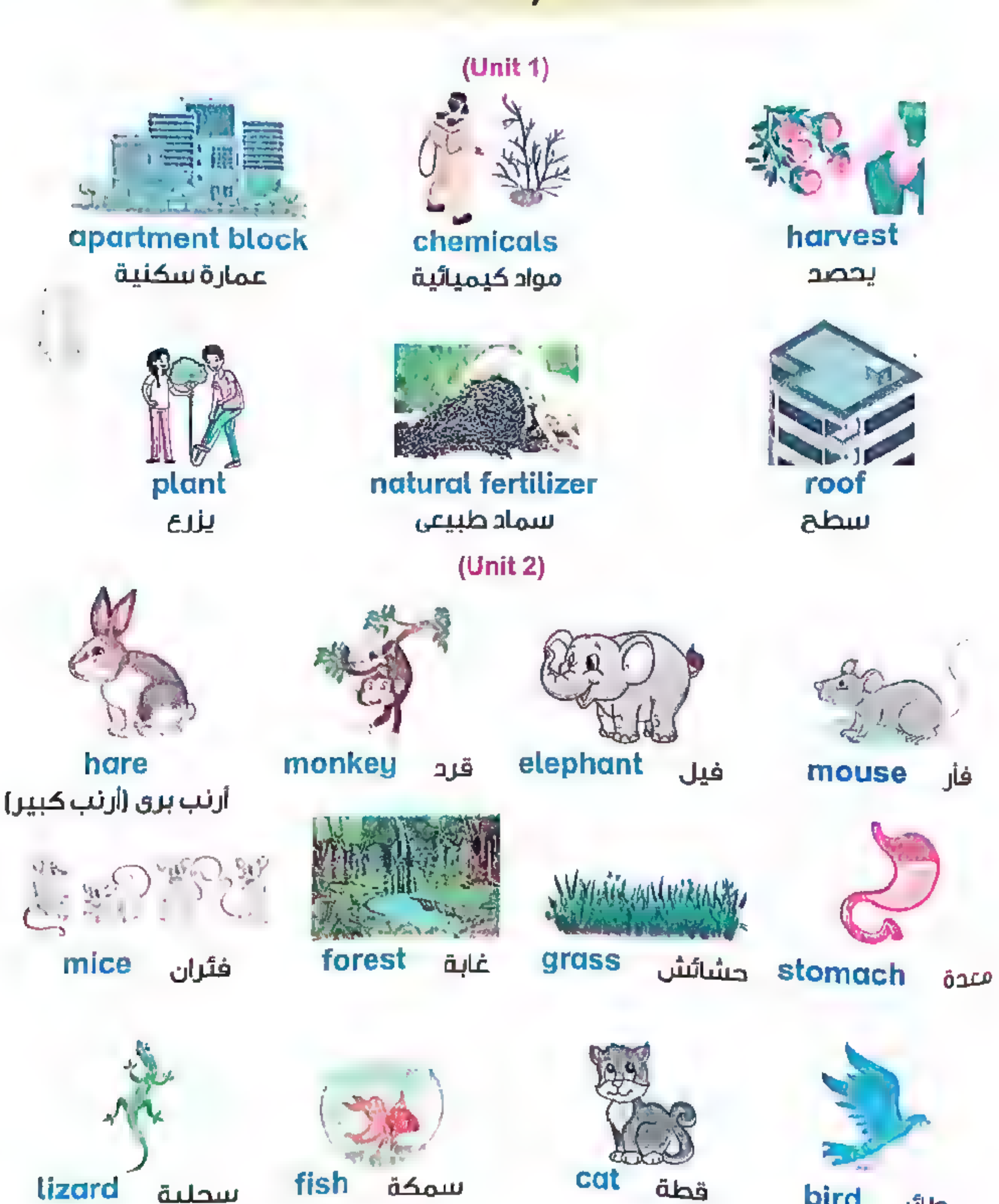
2. are you busy on friday ------------------------



General Revision on Units 1, 2 & 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١ - ٢ - ٣

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات



(Unit 3)



visit the museum
يزور المتحف



take photos
يلتقط صور



the Manial Palace Museum
متحف قصر المنيل



go quad biking in the desert
يركب دراجات رباعية فى الصحراء



ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الرعب



climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق على مئذنة بوابة زويلة



explore the souks
يستكشف الاسواق



(Unit 1)

Mini forest	غابة صغيرة	pet	حيوان أليف
organization	منظمة/ مؤسسة	selfish giant	العملاق الأنانى
special	خاص	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
nature	الطبيعة	hang out	يقضي وقت / يتسكع
wildlife	الحياة البرية	miss	يفتقد شخص أو مكان
railway line	خط سكة حديد	well	بصحة جيدة
local residents	سكان محليون		

(Unit 2)

laboratory	معمل	Gymnasium = Gym	صالة ألعاب رياضة
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى	fountain	نافورة
equipment	معدات	laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
experiments	تجارب علمية	well-being	منفعة / سعادة / رفاهية
pet	حيوان أليف		

(Unit 3)

vacation	أجازة	world of fantasy	عالم من الخيال

Revision 1

trip	رحلة	the ocean	المحيط
seats	مقاعد (ثابتة)	waterfalls	شلالات
carnivals	إحتفالات / مهرجانات	theaters	مسارح
activities	أنشطة	water rides	ألعاب ملاهي مائية
the sunset	غروب الشمس	heights	المرتفعات
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	forest	غابة

Adjectives

(Unit 2)

nervous	متوتر	organized	منظم
calm	هادئ	clever	ماهر – شاطر
shy	خجول	messy	فوضوي / غير منظم
polite	مؤدب	kind	عطوف
friendly	ودود		

(Unit 3)

excited	متحمس	exciting	مثير
interesting	شيق	cool	رائع
busy	مزدحم	realistic	واقعي / حقيقي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			Irregular verbs		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
(Unit 1)					
click	ينقر / يضغط زر	clicked	find out	يكتشف / يعرف	found out
pass	يمر	passed	become	يصبح	became
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	drive	يقود	drove
share	يشارك	shared	build	يبني	built
			sing	يغني / يغرد	sang
			hang out	يتسكع	hung out
(Unit 2)					
offer	يعرض	offered	show	يعرض / يبين	showed
borrow	يستلف / يستعير	borrowed	feel	يشعر	felt
cry	يبكي	cried	take place	يحدث	took place
pet	يُدلل	petted	lie	يرقد	lay
(Unit 3)					
die	يموت	died	pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid

book يحجـز	booked	choose يختــار	chose
explore يستكشـف	explored	take يأخذ / يستغرق	took
concentrate يركز	concentrated		

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

	Statement جملة	Negative نفى	Question سؤال
I / We / You / They	**+ inf.** مصدر الفعل	**+ don't / never + inf.**	**Do + فاعل + inf.?**
He / She / It	**+ inf. + (s-es-ies)**	**+ doesn't + inf. /never + inf. + (s-es-ies)**	**Does + فاعل + inf.?**

Ex. He usually goes to school by bus.

Ex. We don't go to school on Friday.

Ex. - I visit my cousins every week.

Ex. - He doesn't live in a city.

Ex. - Do you like pizza?

- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Ex. Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?

- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

2 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

Always (100%) —إلى→ **Never (0%)**

Indefinite غير محدد

always	دائما
usually	عادة
often	غالبا
sometimes	احيانا
rarely	نادرا
never	ابدا

Definite محدد

once	مرة
twice	مرتين
three times	ثلاث مرات
every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع

◉ نستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة عن سؤال **How often**.

Ex. How often do you play football?

- I play football twice a week. / I sometimes play football.

3 Relative clauses ضمائر الوصل

1 who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذى / التى للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتى للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل فى الجملة.

Ex. Sarah is the girl who always wins the race.



Revision 1

2 which

.نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذى / التى لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) فى الجملة.

Ex. This is the picture which I draw.

3 where

.نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن فى الجملة.

Ex. This is the building where we do physical education.

4 الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشيئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص كما بالمثال :

Ex. I am excited! أنا متحمس!

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيئ المسبب للشعور كما بالمثال :

Ex. The football game is exciting. كرة القدم لعبة مثيرة. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)

5 The zero conditional "If" الحالة الصفرية

If لو / When عندما

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو الأشياء الصحيحة فى الحاضر.

٢- تتكون من:

1 If / When + Present simple + Present simple.

جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط — جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Ex. If / When you heat sugar, it melts.

◉ ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص فى الجزء الثانى من الجملة:

2 If / When + present simple + model verb (can)

جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط — جملة بها فعل ناقص

الأفعال الناقصة مثل: must / can

Ex. If you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتى If / When فى أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma)

أو تأتى فى وسط الجملة ولا يوضع comma:

Ex. If / When you need anything , you can tell me.

Ex. You can tell me if / when you need anything.

٤- وفى السؤال توضع جملة If / When فى آخر السؤال:

كلمة استفهام + can / do / does + subject (فاعل) + inf + if / when + present simple?

Ex. How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

Ex. Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل «يكون» verb to be فى المضارع:

I ⟶ am
He / She / It ⟶ is
We / You / They ⟶ are

- لاحظ فعل «يملك» verb to have فى المضارع:

She / He / It ⟶ has
I / We / You / They ⟶ have

6 Prepositions of time حروف جر الزمن

١ - نستخدم حرف الجر (at) بمعنى (فى) أو (عند) مع الوقت ومع كلمات:

at ⟶ 3 o'clock / lunchtime / midnight.

Ex. I get up at seven o'clock.

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) بمعنى (فى) مع أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ وبعض الكلمات :

on ⟶ Sunday / birthday / March 25 / weekend / school days

Ex. We travel to Aswan on Friday.

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى (فى) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وفترات النهار:

in ⟶ July / winter (spring - summer - fall) / 2020 / in the morning.

- لاحظ الآتى: مع فترات اليوم نستخدم in ما عدا at night.

Ex. My birthday is in August.

Ex. They go to work in the morning.

General Activity - Units (1 - 2 & 3)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

		True	False
1	Last week, Nabil went to a new school.		
2	Essam is good at math.		
3	Each friend had the same personality.		
4	Sherif is polite and shy.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Gym - school - buildings - IT

Tamer : How are you, Amr?

Amr : Fine, thanks. Tamer.

Tamer : How is your new (1) ------------------------------?

Amr : My school is very big. It has a lot of (2) ----------.

Tamer : What are these buildings?

Amr : The (3) --------- building we use it for information technology lessons.

Tamer : Where do you have Physical Education?

Amr : I have it in the (4) ------------------------------.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If you heat water, it .... into steam.
   a) turning b) turned c) turns d) turn
2. My sister is very .... She is always helpful, too.
   a) nervous b) messy c) shy d) kind
3. A: How .... do you play basketball? B: Twice a week.
   a) often b) many c) much d) long
4. What happens if you .... a person on social media?
   a) press b) block c) close d) check
5. Is that the bicycle .... your father bought on your birthday?
   a) where b) who c) which d) why

6. We have one .... on each hand.

a finger   b knee   c ankle   d thumb

7. Emad .... speaks loudly. He is so calm.

a always   b sometimes   c never   d usually

8. Students need laboratories to do ....

a experiments   b homework   c sports   d projects

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A pharmacy is a shop	a. when there is nothing to do.
2 Should we visit	b. it's too loud.
3 Please turn the music down,	c. where we can buy medicine.
4 Children feel bored	d. the museum on Sunday?
	e. strongest and bravest animal.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our neighbor is the person who lives next door to us. Mr Walid is our new neighbor. He moved to his new house yesterday. He is kind and polite. We helped him to organize his house. We showed him the places where he can buy his things. He invited us to have dinner with him and his family today in his new house. His family thanked us for helping them. They are really good neighbors.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "organize" means ....

a carry   b tidy   c invite   d move

2. The neighbor is the person who lives .... door to us.

a behind   b on   c out   d next

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did Mr Walid do when they helped him? --

4. How did they help Mr Walid?--

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. do - farmers - rice - Where - grow?

2. my - are - Cats - pets - best.

3. ride - on - the - Let's - rollercoaster.

4. the community - Do - work - garden - you - in?

7 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your study tips

concentrate - healthy meal

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. how does mona feel today

2. we will visit our cousins in aswan

Theme 2 Myself and others



Unit 4

Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about celebrations.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.

2. Talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.

- يتحدث الطالب عن أشياء تحدث لحظة الكلام أو في غضونها باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر.

3. Understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

- يفهم الطالب معنى كلمات وعبارات في نص.

4. Learn to estimate volumes. - يتعلم الطالب عن تقدير الأحجام.

5. Understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.

- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين /ei/ و /e/ .

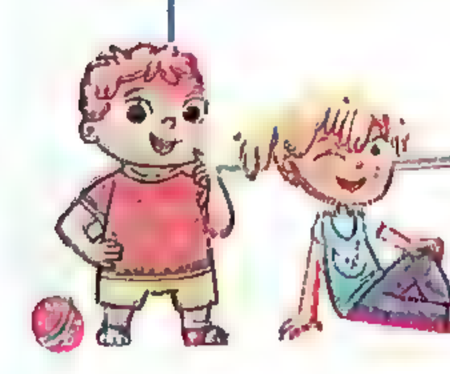
6. Write a formal email invitation.

- يكتب الطالب دعوة رسمية بالبريد الإلكتروني.

7. Research and make a poster about a celebration.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وملصق عن احتفال.









Can you blow up some balloons?








balloons
بالونات

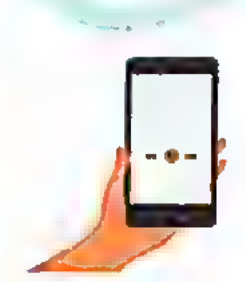

streamers
أشرطة الزينة


birthday cake
تورتة عيد ميلاد


invitation
دعوة



fireworks
ألعاب نارية


playlist قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)

Birthday celebrations phrases عبارات تستخدم في احتفالات عيد الميلاد

hanging up the streamers تعليق أشرطة الزينة	sending the invitations إرسال الدعوات
let off the fireworks إطلاق الألعاب النارية	make a playlist عمل قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)
decorating the birthday cake تزيين تورتة عيد الميلاد	blow up some balloons ملء (نفخ) بعض البالونات بالهواء

Definitions تعريفات

invitation دعوة — You write it to ask someone to come to a party or event.

Help your child learn about a birthday celebration.
ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن الاحتفال بعيد الميلاد.





birthday party	حفل عيد ميلاد
scissors	مقص
string	خيط
candle	شمعة
RSVP*	من فضلك، أرسل الرد
adult	شخص بالغ / راشد
yard	فناء

Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

of course	بالتأكيد / بالطبع
pass me the scissors	مرر لي المقص
it gets dark	تُظلم
tie .... together	يربط....... معًا
on her phone	على الهاتف الخاص بها
I'm not sure yet	لست متأكداً بعد.
everyone has to	يجب على الجميع أن ....
let me know	أخبرني / بلغني
hang......up	يعلق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pass	يمرر	passed
tie	يربط	tied
decorate	يزين	decorated
ask	يطلب / يسأل	asked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hang up	يعلق	hung up
blow up	يملىء بالهواء	blew up
send	يرسل	sent
let off	يطلق	let off

Study the following

1. Will you pass me the scissors, please? – هل يمكن أن تمرر لي المقص من فضلك؟
2. I'm hanging up the streamers. – اقوم بتعليق أشرطة الزينة.
3. I'm tying the streamers together. اقوم بربط أشرطة الزينة معاً.
4. Can you blow up some balloons? – هل يمكنك ملء بعض البالونات بالهواء؟
5. They're decorating the birthday cake. – يقومون بتزيين تورتة عيد الميلاد.
6. Are you sending the invitations? – هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟
7. Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. – ستقوم داليدا بعمل قائمة تشغيل أغاني على هاتفها.
8. We need an adult to let off the fireworks. – نحتاج شخص كبير ليطلق الألعاب النارية.

*RSVP = "répondez s'il vous plaît." (French)= "Respond, if you please." (English)

1 Do you often go to birthday parties? What do you do there? Discuss

هل تذهب غالبًا إلى حفلات أعياد ميلاد؟ ماذا تفعل هناك؟ ناقش.

2 Listen and read. Who is the birthday party for?

استمع واقرأ. لمن حفل عيد الميلاد؟



Hani : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

Youssef : Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers[1] for my sister Nesma's, party. Can you help me?

Hani : Sure. What can I do, cousin?

Youssef : Will you pass[2] me the scissors, please? I'm tying[3] the streamers together and I need to cut the string[4]. Can you also blow up some balloons?[5] We need to hang those up too.

Hani : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

Youssef : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake[6] .They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?[7]

Amina : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.[8]

Youssef : Good idea. How many people are coming?

Amina : I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP"[9] on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know[10] if they're coming.

Hani : Who's choosing the music?

Amina : Dalida is going to make a playlist[11] on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

Hani : That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to made it after she finishes the cake.

Amina : And we need an adult[12] to let off[13] the fireworks [14] in the yard[15] when it gets dark.[16]

Youssef : Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

Arabic Meaning

١- أعلق أشرطة الزينة
٢- تمرر
٣- أربط
٤- خيط
٥- يملىء بعض البالونات بالهواء
٦- تزينان تورتة عيد الميلاد
٧- دعوات
٨- دعوات عبر البريد الإلكتروني
٩- من فضلك، أرسل الرد
١٠- يجب أن يخبروني
١١- قائمة تشغيل
١٢- شخص بالغ/راشد
١٣- يطلق
١٤- ألعاب نارية
١٥- فناء
١٦- تظلم

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person.

يأكل الناس المكرونة الرفيعة في الصين في عيد ميلادهم. تكون المكرونة طويلة جدا لتمثل حياة طويلة للشخص.

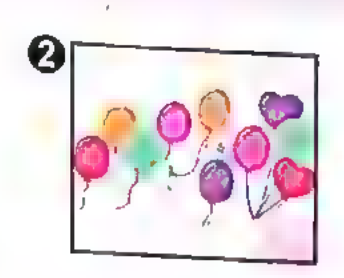
Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك يستمع ويقرأ.



3 Listen again. Number the photos in the order that the speakers talk about them:

استمع مرة أخرى. رقم الصور بالترتيب الذى يذكره المتحدثون (كما بالمثال):

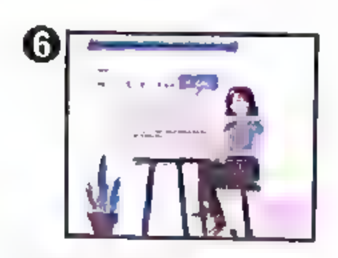
❶ 

❷ 

❸ 

❹ 

❺ 

❻ 

4 Who is doing these things? Read and match:

من يفعل هذه الأشياء؟ اقرأ وصل:

1. hanging up the streamers	a. Dalida and Noha
2. blowing up the balloons	b. Amina
3. decorating the cake	c. Hani
4. sending the invitations	d. Youssef

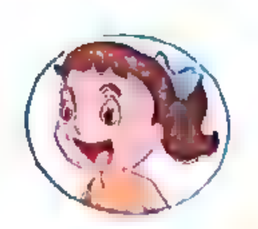
5 Work in pairs. Describe a word or expression from Exercise 3 or 4 for your partner to guess:

اعمل فى ثنائيات. صف كلمة أو تعبير من تمرين (٣) أو (٤) لزميلك ليخمن ما هى.



You write it to ask someone to come to a party or event. What is it?

It's an invitation!



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

		True	False
1	Eman's birthday was last Friday.		
2	Eman's friends are helping her.		
3	They're eating the birthday cake.		
4	They love her very much.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

birthday - blow - streamers - help

Amira: What are you doing, Nada?

Nada : I'm hanging up some (1) ------------------------------.

Amira: Why?

Nada : It's my sister's (2) ------------------------------ tonight.

Amira: Do you need any (3) ------------------------------?

Nada : Yes, please. Can you (4) -------------------- up some balloons?

Amira: Sure.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm ------------ up the streamers for my sister's birthday.
   a) blowing b) hanging c) cutting d) writing
2. I couldn't ------------ up balloons when I was young.
   a) blow b) let c) send d) give
3. I always send ------------ to my friends to come to my birthday party
   a) celebrations b) decorations c) invitations d) organizations
4. I am making a ------------ of my favorite songs.
   a) menu b) vacation c) plan d) playlist

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. need - cut - I - string - to - the.

---

2. you - sending - Are - invitations - the?

---

3. together- streamers - I'm - the - tying.

---

4. blow up - Can - balloons - some - you?

---

5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your birthday

friends - balloons

---

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what can i do, cousin

---

2. we need to hang those up too, amira



Lesson 2 ★ I'm studying hard for my exams



استمع الى المفردات.



Activities	أنشطة
organize a party	ينظم حفل
study for exams	يذاكر من أجل الامتحانات
cycling	ركوب الدراجات
do exercise	يؤدى تمرينات رياضية
go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى



important	مهم
news	أخبار
free time	وقت الفراغ
music concert	حفل موسيقى
funny movie	فيلم مضحك
soon	قريبًا
hard	بجد
documentary	فيلم / برنامج وثائقى
revision	مراجعة
slow reader	قارىء بطيء
history books	كتب التاريخ
indoors	في الداخل (داخل المبنى)



Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

have fun	يستمتع بوقته
looking forward to + v-ing	يتطلع إلى
take ages	يستغرق وقت طويل
at the moment	في الوقت الحالي
get outside	يخرج
a few times a week	مرات قليلة كل أسبوع
on the weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع

Help your child learn vocabulary about studying for the exams.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن المذاكرة من اجل الامتحانات:



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
worry	يقلق	worried
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
organize	ينظم	organized
miss	يفتقد (شخص)	missed
finish	ينهي	finished

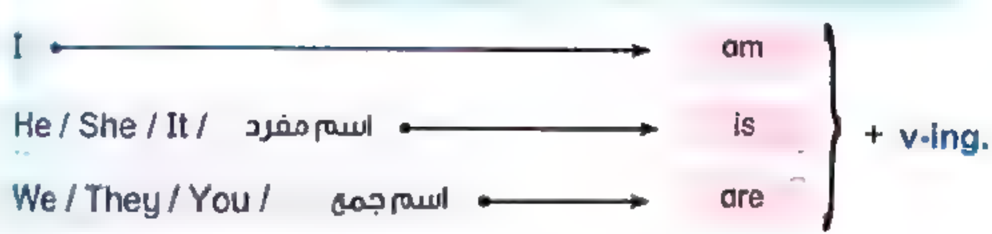
Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
run	يجري	ran
see	يرى	saw
wear	يرتدي	wore
read	يقرأ	read
show	يوضح / يبين	showed

Grammar قواعد لغوية

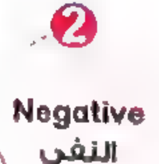
The present continuous tense
زمن المضارع المستمر





Ex. She's studying for her exams this week.

ننفي زمن المضارع المستمر بوضع (not) بعد am - is - are.





Ex. They aren't enjoying their vacation at the moment.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية،

I am → I'm	She is → She's	is not → isn't
He is → He's	We are → We're	are not → aren't

3 Question السؤال

◎نسأل عن زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية :

◎فى حالة السؤال بـ (هل...؟) :

Am →	I	+ V-ing....?
Is →	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	
Are →	we / they / you / اسم جمع	

Ex. Are you playing football today?

◎وللإجابة المختصرة نقول :

- Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

◎فى حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

كلمة استفهام + am, is , are + فاعل + V-ing....?

Ex. What are you doing, girls?

- We're helping to make the birthday cake.

4 Usage الاستخدام

◎يستخدم للتعبير عن احداث بدأت فى الماضى وما زالت مستمرة فى الوقت الحاضر ومستمرة فى المستقبل ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام

Ex. She's studying for her exams this week.

Ex. I'm reading a book at the moment.

Ex. I'm finishing Everything in Ancient Egypt but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader!

◎هنا المعنى انى اقرأ كتاب حاليا حيث بدأت قرأته منذ فترة ولم انتهى منه بعد

◎يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل يحدث ومستمر فى لحظة الكلام.

Ex. Sara is watching TV now.

◎يستخدم لوصف اشياء تحدث فى صورة.

Ex. What are Noha and Dalida doing there?

- They're playing with the balloons.

◎يعبر عن أحداث تم التخطيط لها مسبقًا لتحدث فى المستقبل.

Ex. Many friends are coming to my birthday party tomorrow.

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

today	اليوم	this week	هذا الاسبوع	Look!	انظر!
now	الآن	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة/حاليًا	Listen!	استمع!
		at present	فى الوقت الحاضر	Look out!	احترس!



١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة (ing) [مع بعض الأفعال]:

sit → sitting   hit → hitting

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق يحذف الـ(e) ثم تضاف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using   make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing   be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرفي (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying   die → dying   tie → tying

Study the following

1. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment.
   - اذاكر بجد من أجل امتحاناتي في الوقت الحالي.
2. I'm not spending all my time indoors. - لا أقضي كل وقتى فى الداخل (فى المنزل).
3. I know it is important to get outside and do some exercise.
   - اعلم أنه من المهم الخروج وممارسة التمارين الرياضية.
4. I'm going running every morning in the park. - انا اذهب للجرى كل صباح في المتنزه.
5. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad.
   - اقوم أيضًا بركوب الدراجات في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع مع والدي.
6. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week.
   - أحاول رؤية أصدقائي مرات قليلة في الأسبوع.
7. My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house.
   - ينظم صديقي آسر حفلة في منزله.
8. What are you reading? - ماذا تقرأ؟
9. What's the weather like in Alexandria? - ما هى حالة الطقس فى الاسكندرية؟

1 **Listen and read Ali's email to his friend Eyad. Do the boys live in the same city?**

استمع واقرأ إيميل على لصديقه إياد. هل يعيش الأولاد فى نفس المدينة؟

New Message

Cc Bcc

To ali@qwikmail.com

From eyad@egyptmail.com

Subject What's your news?

استمع إلى النص:

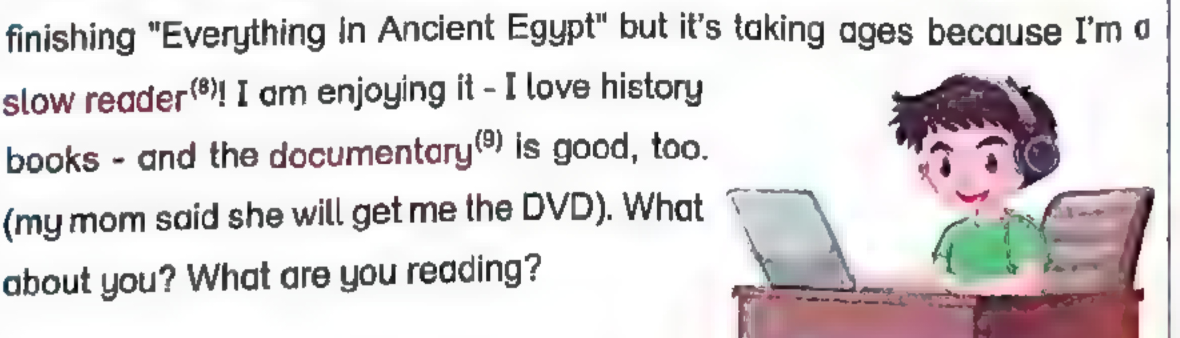
Hi Eyad,

How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry[1]; I'm not spending all my time indoors[2]! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling[3] on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too - it's good to relax[4] and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision[5] is going! My friend Asser is organizing[6] a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that[7].

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already!

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing "Everything In Ancient Egypt" but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader[8]! I am enjoying it - I love history books - and the documentary[9] is good, too. (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?



Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali

Arabic Meaning

١- لا تقلق
٢- فى الداخل
٣- اركب دراجة
٤- استرخى
٥- مراجعة
٦- ينظم
٧- نتطلع إلى ذلك
٨- قارئ بطئ
٩- فيلم / برنامج وثائقى

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False)

اقرأ واكتب صح / خطأ

1. Ali doesn't have any free time at the moment. ( )
2. When he sees his friends, they always talk about their exams. ( )
3. There is a party at Ali's house soon. ( )
4. Ali reads slowly. ( )

3 Check (✓) which of these activities Ali is doing around now:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام الأنشطة التى يقوم بها وائل الآن

1. studying for exams ☐
2. spending all his times indoors ☐
3. going running in the park ☐
4. organizing a party ☐
5. cycling ☐
6. finishing a book ☐

4 Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verb:

اكمل الجمل بصيغة زمن المضارع المستمر

1. Malak __is finishing__ her project on Egyptian celebrations this week. (finish)
2. The students ________ hard for a music concert. (practice)
3. Where ________ your brother ________ in the USA? (study)
4. We ________ our lunch at the moment. (eat)
5. ________ Basel and Amir ________ a funny movie? (watch)
6. I ________ in the basketball match today, I have too much school work. (not play)

5 Put the words in order. Write the sentences in your notebook

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب. اكتب الجمل فى كراستك

1. playing? - Are - a - they - game .
   Are they playing a game?
2. wearing - a - hat. - I'm - new ________
3. some - Ahmed - isn't - cake. - eating ________
4. sisters - My - cooking - food. - some - are ________
5. your - taking - dad - Is - photos? ________
6. helping - Laila and Mona - your - are - mom. ________

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm .... running every morning in the park.
   a go   b goes   c went   d going
2. Ahmed .... eating any cake.
   a aren't   b don't   c isn't   d weren't
3. .... is painting his house this week.
   a We   b You   c They   d He
4. I'm .... spending all my time indoors.
   a no   b not   c don't   d doesn't
5. What .... the boys playing in the club now?
   a is   b were   c are   d am
6. I .... enjoying my time here. It's not interesting.
   a am   b am not   c do   d don't
7. The boys' dad .... helping them now.
   a is   b are   c were   d was

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Are you	a. a story at the moment.
2 What are	b. Alexandria.
3 I'm studying hard	c. you reading?
4 I'm reading	d. for my exams.
	e. playing a game?

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Laila is cooking) rice at the moment?
2. They .... (is) coming from school now.
3. Look! The cat is .... (run) after the mouse.
4. Hatem .... (is studying) now, he's sleeping.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. trying - friends - to - I'm - help - my. ------------------------
2. isn't - coming - Marwa - party - tomorrow - the - to ------------------------
3. you - studying - Are - exams - for - your? ------------------------
4. Where - today - you - are - going? ------------------------
5. is - his house - organizing - My friend - a party - at. ------------------------

5 Write an email of about Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة:

cycling - go running

مجاب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Amir telling him about what activities you are doing these days. Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek55@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir33@gmail.com.

New Message		
To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

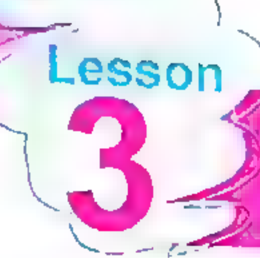
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what s the weather like ------------------------
2. i m not spending all my free time in reading ------------------------





Birthdays around the world




استمع إلى المفردات

blow out	يطفيء (الشمع)
breath	النفس
burn	يحترق
noodles	مكرونة رفيعة وطويلة (شعرية)

tradition	تقليد
guest	ضيف
adult	راشد / بالغ
celebration	احتفال



age	عمر / سن
snack	وجبة خفيفة
piece	قطعة
birthday card	كارت عيد ميلاد
especially	خصوصاً
(be) born	يولد
everywhere	في كل مكان

peach	خوخة
Chinese	الصينيون
usual	معتاد
party food	طعام الحفل
present	هدية
flame	لهب
basbousa	بسبوسة

Countries الدول

India	الهند
Brazil	البرازيل
Nigeria	نيجيريا
the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

Britain	بريطانيا
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا
China	الصين
Holland	هولندا

Help your child learn about birthdays. ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن أعياد الميلاد.

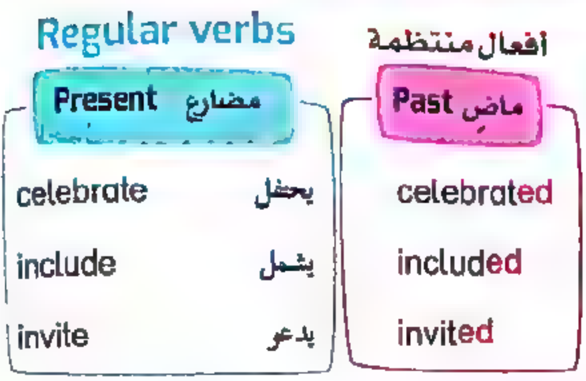


Lesson 3

Phrases and Prepositions  عبارات وحروف جر

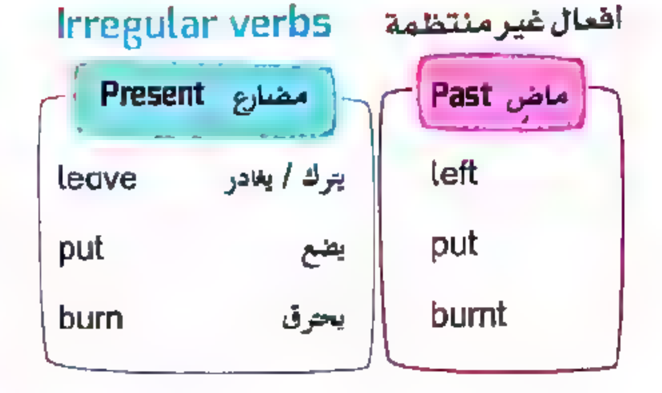
Phrase	المعنى
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
come out	يخرج
get a present	يحصل على هدية
give a present	يعطي هدية
fully grown	كامل النضج
blow out the candles	يطفيء الشمع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
include	يشمل	included
invite	يدعو	invited



Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
leave	يترك / يغادر	left
put	يضع	put
burn	يحرق	burnt

Definitions تعريفات

Word	المعنى	Definition
blow out	يطفيء	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame
adults	البالغون	fully grown people, not children
breath	النفس	the air that comes out of mouth
noodles	مكرونة رفيعة وطويلة (شعرية)	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.
guests	ضيوف	people you invite to your home

Study the following

1. Birthdays are celebrated all over the world.
   - يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد فى جميع أنحاء العالم.
2. We usually make a birthday cake.
   - عادة ما نصنع تورتة عيد الميلاد.
3. We put candles on the cake to show the children's age.
   - نضع الشموع على التورتة لتبين اعمار الاطفال.
4. The candles show the person's age.
   - تبين الشموع عمر الشخص.
5. The children usually get a present.
   - عادة ما يحصل الاطفال على هدية.
6. Children everywhere like party food.
   - يحب الأطفال فى كل مكان طعام الحفل.
7. Children like to blow out the candles.
   - يحب الأطفال أن يطفئوا الشموع.
8. The birthday child gives cake to all the guests.
   - يعطى الطفل صاحب عيد الميلاد تورتة لكل الضيوف.
9. It's good to do this with one breath.
   - من الجيد أن تفعل ذلك فى نفس واحد.
10. They become one on the day they are born.
    - يصبحوا عندهم سنة فى اليوم الذى يولدون فيه.
11. My mom always makes basbousa.
    - دائما ما تعد أمى البسبوسة.

Tip!

- To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

- لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات فى النص، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولاً. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية فى كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متطابقة أو تتحدث عن نفس الموضوعات؟



1 Listen and read the text. Which birthday or party food would you like to eat the most? Discuss with a partner:

استمع واقرأ النص، أى طعام أعياد الميلاد أو الحفلات تحب أكثر؟ ناقش مع زميلك:

استمع إلى النص:



Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- Our birthday celebrations[1]

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present[2], too

2- Birthdays are not just for children

What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults[3]. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age.



In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10 and 15.

Arabic Meaning

١- احتفال
٢- هدية
٣- بالغون
٤- وجبة خفيفة
٥- يطفئ
٦- النفس
٧- تحترق
٨- ضيوف
٩- مكرونة رفيعة

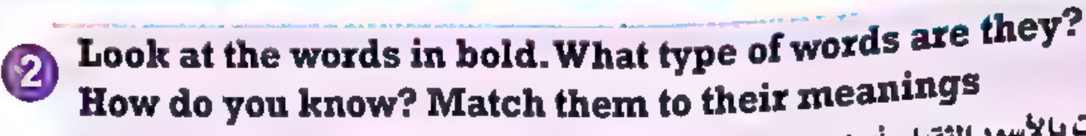
3- Candles and cakes

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches and snacks[4]. In many countries, children like to blow out[5] the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath[6]! But in India, the candles are left to burn[7]. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests[8] at their party first, before they have some themselves.



4- A longer life

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles[9] or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!



2 **Look at the words in bold. What type of words are they? How do you know? Match them to their meanings**

انظر إلى الكلمات بالأسود الثقيل. أى نوع من الكلمات هى؟ كيف تعرف؟ صلهم بمعانيهم :

1. adults
2. blow out
3. breath
4. noodles
5. guests

a. the air that comes out of mouth
b. a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs
c. fully grown people, not children
d. people you invite to your home
e. to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame

3 **Read again. Answer the questions:** اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Paragraph 1: Who do we usually invite to birthday parties?
   We usually invite a lot of family and friends.
2. Paragraph 2: In which countries are 10 and 15 important birthdays?
   ....
3. Paragraph 3: Who gets the first piece of birthday cake in India?
   ....
4. Paragraph 4: How old are Chinese children when they are born?
   ....

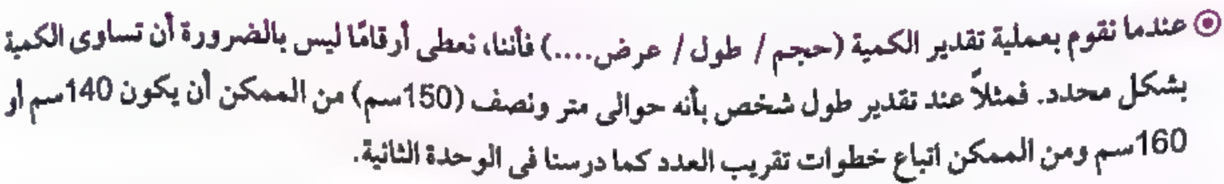


Estimating volume تقدير الحجم



amount	مقدار / كمية	milkshake	مخفوق الحليب
exact	دقيق / مضبوط	in total	إجمالى / فى المجمل
fridge	ثلاجة	full	ممتلىء
half a liter	نصف لتر	estimate (d)	يقدر
milliliter	ملليلتر	estimation	تقدير
measuring tube	أنبوب قياس	guess (ed)	يخمن





◉ عندما نقوم بعملية تقدير الكمية (حجم / طول / عرض....) فأننا، نعطى أرقامًا ليس بالضرورة أن تساوى الكمية بشكل محدد. فمثلاً عند تقدير طول شخص بأنه حوالى متر ونصف (150سم) من الممكن أن يكون 140سم أو 160سم ومن الممكن اتباع خطوات تقريب العدد كما درسنا فى الوحدة الثانية.

◉ حيث إذا كان الرقم المطلوب تقديره يساوى أو يزيد عن 5 / 50 / 500 فنقوم بزيادة الكمية المطلوب تقديرها:

260 ملليلتر ≃ 300 ملليلتر بالتقريب.

◉ اما إذا كان الرقم اقل من أو يساوى 4 / 49 / 499 لا نزيد الرقم ويبقى الرقم الصغير كما هو.

– فمثلاً لو سأل شخص عن كمية من السائل تبلغ 220 ملليلتر ما هو اقرب تقدير لها فيمكن أن نقول 200 ملليلتر.

Tip!

- When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can estimate, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter" not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word about when giving an estimation.

عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما ، فإننا لا نحتاج دائمًا أن نذكر ذلك بدقة. يمكننا تقدير أو تخمين المقدار. على سبيل المثال، لو تسألك والدتك، «ما مقدار الحليب الموجود في ثلاجة؟» يمكنك أن تقول: «هناك حوالي نصف لتر» وليس «هناك ٤٨٧ مليلتر». غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة «حوالي» عند إعطاء تقدير.

1 **Look at the measuring tubes. Estimate how much water is in each one? How much water is there in total?**

انظر إلى أنابيب القياس. قم بتقدير كمية الماء فى كل منها. كم إجمالى كمية المياه؟

1. .... 220 .... ml
2. .... ml
3. .... ml
4. .... ml
5. .... ml

6. There's about ...... ml of water in total.





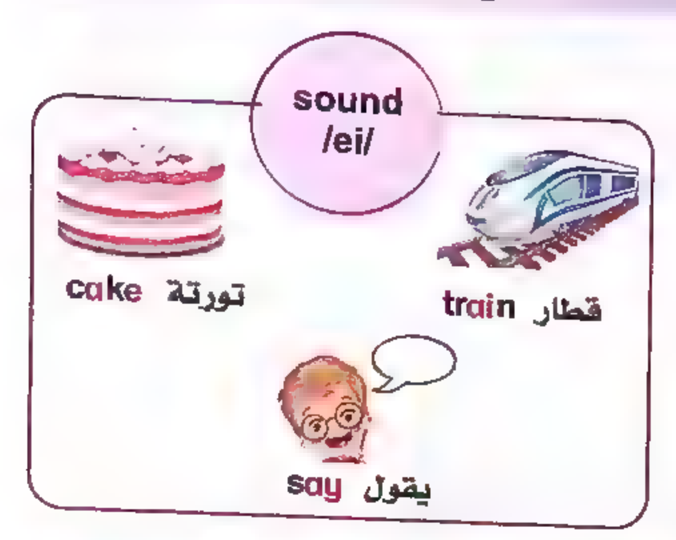
The sounds /ei/ & /e/

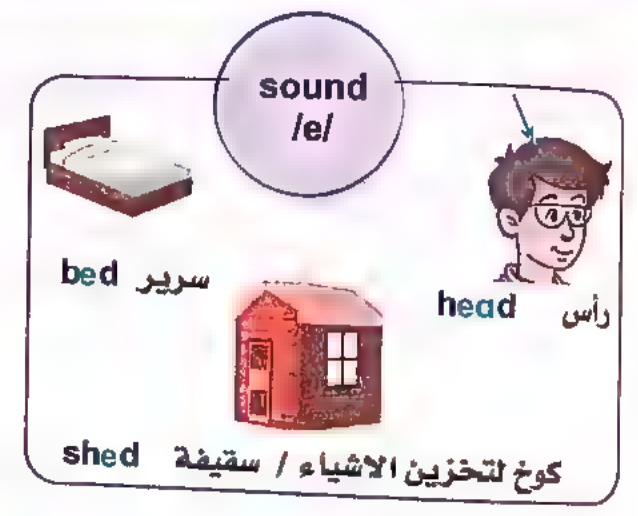
◉ ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتى /ei/ وتمثله الحروف ai / ay / a-e.

◉ وندرس أيضًا نطق الرمز الصوتى /e/ وتمثله الحروف ai / ea / e في الكلمات الآتية:

1 Look, listen, and repeat

انظر واستمع وردد:



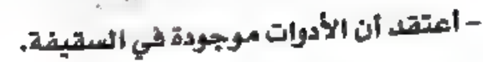


The sound /ei/	
bake	يخبز
pay	يدفع (مالًا)
stay	يبقى / يقيم
wait	ينتظر
main	رئيسى
shade	ظل
sail	يبحر - شراع
mate	رفيق
pain	ألم
plate	طبق مسطح
rainbow	قوس قزح

The sound /e/	
said	يقول
bread	خبز
get	يحصل على
ledge	حافة
men	رجال
sell	يبيع
met	قابل
pen	قلم جاف
desk	مقعد
let	يدع / يترك



Lesson 3



Study the following

1. I think the tools are in the shed. — أعتقد أن الأدوات موجودة في السقيفة.
2. I want to sail a boat! — أريد أن أبحر بقارب!
3. Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday. — قالت جميلة أنها متحمسة لاجازتها.
4. Hani has a pain in his foot. — يعاني هاني من ألم في قدمه.

2 Read the words and write them in the correct group:

اقرأ الكلمات واكتبهم في المجموعات الصحيحة :

~~bake~~ - bread - get - ledge - pay - said - stay - wait

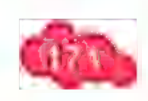
/eɪ/	/e/
bake	

3 Listen and circle the word that you hear: استمع وضع دائرة على الكلمة التي تسمعها :

1. Is this the (main) / men paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the shed / shade.
3. I want to sail / sell a boat!
4. Gameela say / said that she's excited about her holiday.
5. Hani has a pain / pen in his foot.

4 Listen, read, and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد :

1. I baked a plate of tasty cakes.
2. Let's get the pens from the desk.



Activities





1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:



1. Hossam's friend's ______________ was last week.
2. He had a big ______________ .
3. He blew out the candles with one ______________ .
4. Hossam ______________ all his friends to the party.

2 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

burn - tradition - blow - breath

Last week, I visited a friend in India. It was his birthday. In the celebration, we didn't ❶______________ out the candles. They are left to ❷ ______________ . It's a ❸______________ there.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We blow______________ candles on birthdays.

   a over   b out   c into   d about

2. I invited many ______________on my birthday celebration.

   a guests   b pieces   c noodles   d presents

3. In India, the candles are left to______________ .

   a bear   b learn   c burn   d turn

4. Children usually get ______________ on their birthdays.

   a traditions   b presents   c trains   d peaches

5. Children everywhere like party ______________ .

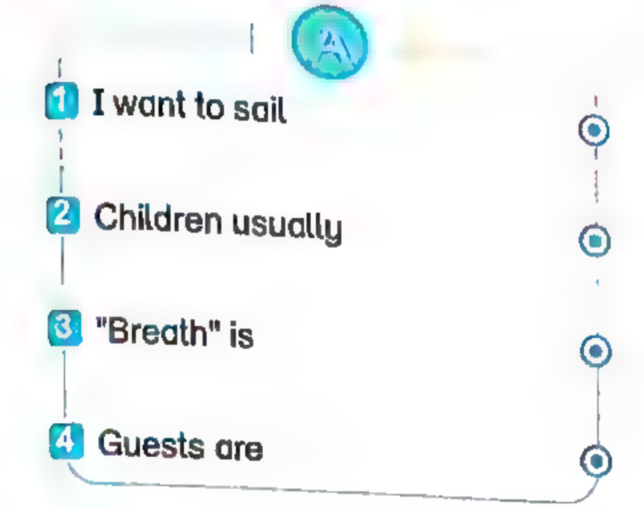
   a food   b breath   c coat   d boat

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 I want to sail	a. people you invite to your home.
2 Children usually	b. family and friends.
3 "Breath" is	c. a boat.
4 Guests are	d. get a present on birthdays.
	e. the air that comes out of mouth.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. want - sail - I - a boat - to.

----

2. the pens - Let's - from - the desk - get.

----

3. has - foot - a pain - Hani - in - his .

----

4. mom - always - My - basbousa - makes.

----

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. in china, people eat noodles

----

2. how do you celebrate your birthday, ali

Lessons 4&5

Writing & Project





استمع إلى المفردات:

confirm	يؤكد
Mother's Day	عيد الأم
reply	رد
attend	يحضر
drinks	مشروبات
Sincerely	بصدق / بإخلاص

formal language	لغة رسمية
polite	مهذب
correct	صحيح
spelling	الهجاء
costume	ملابس / زى
celebration	احتفال



celebration	احتفال	party
attend	يحضر	come to
confirm	يؤكد	say yes or no

Other words كلمات أخرى

event	حدث
details	تفاصيل
below	أسفل
local	محلى
prize	جائزة

sports hall	قاعة لممارسة الرياضة
address	عنوان
community	مجتمع صغير
grammar	قواعد لغوية

Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

(be) addressed to	مرسل إلى
as well as	بالإضافة إلى

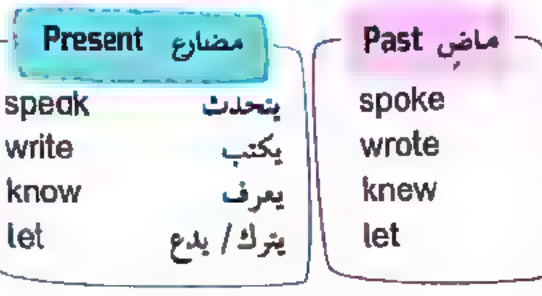
bye for now	إلى اللقاء الآن
in writing	كتابيًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
receive	يستلم	received
attend	يحضر	attended
reply	يرد	replied
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed
dress up	يتهندم	dressed up
figure out	يستنتج	figured out

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
speak	يتحدث	spoke
write	يكتب	wrote
know	يعرف	knew
let	يترك / يدع	let

Study the following

1. I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year.
   – أكتب إليكم لأدعوكم إلى احتفال المدرسة بعيد الأم هذا العام.
2. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21.
   – ننظم يومًا خاصًا للحدث يوم الأحد ٢١ مارس.
3. We are inviting people from the local community who often help our school.
   – ندعو الناس من المجتمع المحلي الذين غالبًا ما يساعدوا مدرستنا.
4. We very much hope you can attend. – نأمل بشدة ان تتمكن من الحضور.
5. RSVP in writing to the email address above.
   – من فضلك رد سريعا و كتابيًا على عنوان البريد الإلكتروني أعلاه.
6. Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.
   – يرجى الرد قبل ٢٠ فبراير لتأكيد ما إذا كان بإمكانك حضور الاحتفال.
7. Dress up as your favorite character from your favorite book.
   – ارتدي ملابس شخصيتك المفضلة من كتابك المفضل.
8. Figure out which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.
   – اكتشف شخصية أصدقائك من الملابس التي يرتدونها.
9. We have an amazing prize for the best costume. – لدينا جائزة رائعة لأفضل زي.
10. Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks!
    – تعال وجرب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!
11. Who is the invitation addressed to? – لمن توجه هذه الدعوة؟





Tip!

- We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم اللغة الرسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب لأشخاص لا نعرفهم جيداً. نستخدم لغة مهذبة وهجاء صحيح وقواعد سليمة فى الكتابات الرسمية.

1 Read the invitation and answer the questions:

اقرأ الدعوة وأجب عن الأسئلة :

1. What is the celebration? the school's Mother's Day celebration
2. Who is the invitation addressed to? ....
3. When and where is the celebration? ....
4. When does Randa ask to receive Mr Ahmed's reply? ....

Reading  نص القراءة

استمع إلى النص : 

New Message

From	celebrationgroup@newschool.com	Cc Bcc
To	Mr Ahmed Hegazy	
Subject	Mother's Day Celebration	

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's **Mother's Day celebration**(1) this year. We are organizing a special day(2) for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below(3)). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community(4) who often help our school. We very much hope you can **attend**(5).

Date : Sunday March 21

Time : 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

Location : School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

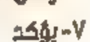
Please reply(6) by February 20 to confirm(7) if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal

Arabic Meaning

١- احتفال عيد الأم
٢- يوم خاص
٣- التفاصيل أسفل
٤- المجتمع المحلى
٥- يحضر
٦- ارسل الرد
٧- يؤكد







2 Find and write the phrases in the email for the functions (1-4):

اوجد واكتب العبارات فى رسالة البريد الإلكترونى للوظائف من ١ إلى ٤ :

1. Opening phrase .... Dear .... ١- عبارة افتتاحية.
2. Reason for writing .... ٢- سبب الكتابة
3. A request .... ٣- طلب.
4. Closing phrase .... ٤- عبارة ختامية.

3 Look at the words in bold. Match them to the more informal expressions:

انظر إلى الكلمات بالأسود العريض وصلهم بالتعبيرات غير الرسمية :

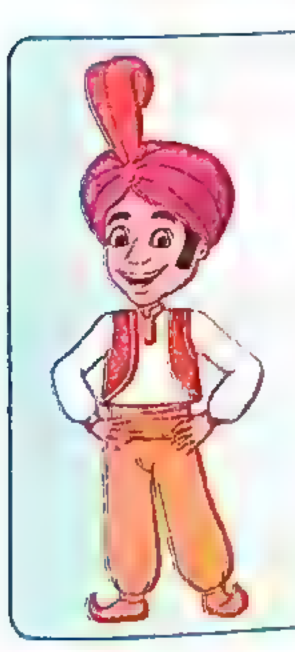
1. **Sincerely,**	a. say yes or no
2. **celebration**	b. party
3. **attend**	c. come to
4. **confirm**	d. Hi!
5. **Dear**	e. Bye for now

4 Read and do

اقرأ وافعل

A poster for a celebration خطوات عمل ملصق لاحتفال

1. Read your poster. Look carefully at the title, text, and pictures.
2. Give your celebration a name and write a title.
3. Write a description of the event and the things people can do.
4. Add a photo/some photos.
5. Include information about the place, date, and time.
6. Check your writing: are the spelling, grammar, and punctuation correct?



Book Day Party!

Let's celebrate reading!

Dress up[1] as your favorite character[2] from your favorite book.

Figure out[3] which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.

We have an amazing prize for the best costume[4].

Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks![5]

Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall[6]

Family members[7] are all welcome!

Arabic Meaning

١- ارتدى ملابس
٢- شخصيتك المفضلة
٣- اكتشف/ استنتج
٤- زى
٥- وجبات خفيفة لذيذة
٦- قاعة
٧- أفراد

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We very much hope you can ____________ the party.
   a attend b invite c email d write
2. ____________ up as your favorite character.
   a Figure b Dress c Speak d Know
3. We have an amazing ____________ for the best costume.
   a prize b spelling c hall d address
4. Tomorrow is our school's Mother's Day ____________.
   a estimation b celebration c information d location
5. ____________ out which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.
   a Dress b Figure c Get d Watch

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Can you attend	a. you can attend.
2 We have an amazing	b. prize for the best costume.
3 We hope	c. our drinks.
4 Come and try	d. the celebration?
	e. very much.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. day - are - special - organizing - We - a.

----

2. addressed - is - invitation - the - Who - to?

----

3. are - the - inviting - local community - We - from - people.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. attend - We - very much - hope - the - you - can



4 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

big party - invite

To your friend Hana inviting her to your birthday party. Your name is Hala and your email address is hala@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hana@yahoo.com.

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. The event is on sunday march 21

----

2. what does randa do







Birthday celebration احتفال عيد ميلاد



balloons
بالونات



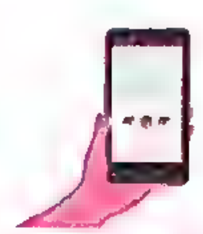
streamers
أشرطة الزينة



birthday cake
تورتة عيد ميلاد



invitation
دعوة



playlist
قائمة تشغيل (أغانى)



fireworks
ألعاب نارية

cycling	ركوب الدراجات
do exercise	يؤدى تمرينات رياضية
go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى
celebration	احتفال
traditions	تقاليد
organize a party	ينظم حفل
study for exams	يذاكر من أجل الامتحانات
blow out	يطفىء (الشمع)
breath	النفس
burn (burnt)	يحترق
formal language	لغة رسمية

polite	مهذب
correct	صحيح
spelling	الهجاء
costume	ملابس / زى
estimate (d)	يقدر
guess (ed)	يخمن
present	هدية
guest	ضيف
adult	راشد / بالغ
Mother's Day	عيد الأم
reply	رد
drinks	مشروبات

Help your child revise Unit 4.
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

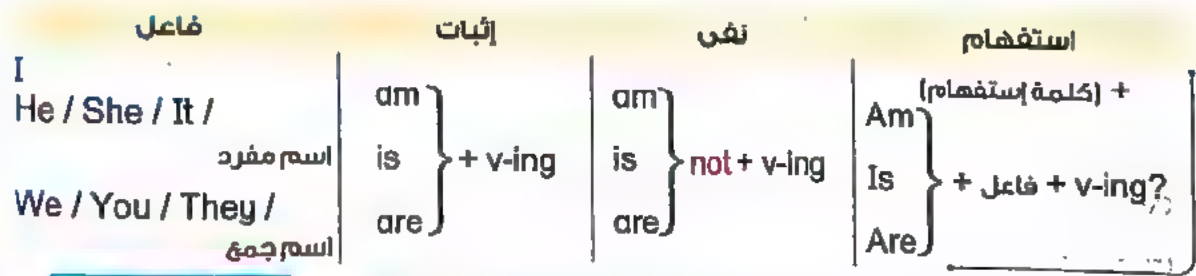
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
decorate	يزين	decorated
organize	ينظم	organized
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
invite	يدعو	invited
attend	يحضر	attended
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed
dress up	يتهندم	dressed up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hang up	يعلق	hung up
blow up	يملىء بالهواء	blew up
sing	يغني	sang
know	يعرف	knew
let	يترك / يدع	let
leave	يترك / يغادر	left

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر



فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I	am + v-ing	am not + v-ing	Am + فاعل + v-ing?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is + v-ing	is not + v-ing	Is + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are + v-ing	are not + v-ing	Are + فاعل + v-ing?

(كلمة إستفهام) + Am / Is / Are + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords كلمات دالة: **Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present**

Usage الاستخدام:

١- يستخدم لوصف صورة.

٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Ex. 1. Sama and Shrouk **are cooking** lunch now.
2. Rahma **is not taking** photos at the moment.
3. What **are** Youssef and Omar **doing**?
4. **Is** Osman **reading** a book now? - Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.



Answers to texts

Lesson 1

My birthday

1. Yesterday was my birthday. I'm twelve years old. I had a party and I invited my friends, Ziad and Shady. They came to my house early to help me. They brought nice presents for me. They blew up balloons. We had a lot of fun. I like my friends.

Lesson 2

Activities I'm doing these days

2. **New Message**

To amir33@gmail.com. — Cc Bcc

From tarek55@yahoo.com

Subject Activities I'm doing these days

Dear Amir,

How are you and your family? It's holiday. I have free time. So I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends. I sometimes go to the cinema with my family. It's good to relax and have fun.

Write soon and tell me your news.

Yours,

Tarek



Lessons 4&5

Invitation to my birthday party

③

New Message

To	hana@yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	hala@gmail.com	
Subject	Invitation to my birthday party	

Dear Hana,

I'm so happy to write to you. How are you? My birthday is next Friday. I'm having a big party. I'd like to invite you to come. All our friends will be there. We will do many things. We will decorate the cake and blow up the balloons. Waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Hala

Al-Azhar Test

My free time

④ I don't have much free time. I spend it in a useful way. I like reading history books. I also like doing exercise. I sometimes draw and color nice pictures.

Activity Unit 4

Getting ready for the exams

⑤ I'm taking my exams next week. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I always have regular breaks to feel relax. I don't worry. I just study hard. I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. It's good to have fun sometimes. I talk to my friends. We talk about our revision.



Al-Azhar Test



الأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Shady's friends and family gave him many ------------ on his last birthday. (books - presents - flowers)

2. Everyone wished him " ------------ Birthday". (Happy - Nice - Beautiful)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

birthday - up - doing

A: What are you ------------------------------------?

B: I'm blowing ------------------------------------ some balloons.

A: Why?

B: Because my ------------------------------------ is today.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

I'm Ola. On my last birthday, mom made a wonderful birthday cake. It was very delicious. All my friends liked it. It had a lot of chocolate and fruit. My friends said it was the best in the celebration. I asked my mom to make me another one.

1. Ola's mother made a wonderful .... (chocolate - cake - fruit)
2. Ola's .... attended the celebration. (sisters - cousins - friends)
3. The celebration was for Ola's .... (success - birthday - wedding)
4. Everyone .... the cake. (liked - disliked - threw)
5. Ola asked her mother to .... another cake. (eat - make - buy)



D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm .... up the streamers.
   a hanging b blowing c cutting d feeding
2. We have a party today. We invited many ....
   a guests b presents c candles d snacks
3. The birthday boy blew out the candles with one ....
   a path b breath c break d park
4. My friend is .... a party at his house at the moment.
   a organize b organizing c organizes d organized
5. They .... decorating the birthday cake.
   a 'm b 's c 've d 're

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. I'm - studying - my - hard - exams - for.
....
2. birthday - got - present - I - a.
....
3. the - you - Are - invitations - sending?
....

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your free time

....
....
....
....
....
....

on Unit 4 Activity

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 In Japan, people eat noodles on their birthday.		
2 The noodles are very short.		
3 This represents a long life for the person.		
4 It's a tradition there.		

2 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

celebrates - friends - invitations - party

Samy : When is your birthday, Munir?

Munir : It's next month.

Samy : Will you have a birthday 1 ------------------------------?

Munir : Sure. My family 2 ------------------------------ it every year.

Samy : Do you invite your 3 ------------------------------?

Munir : Yes, I send them email 4 ------------------------------.

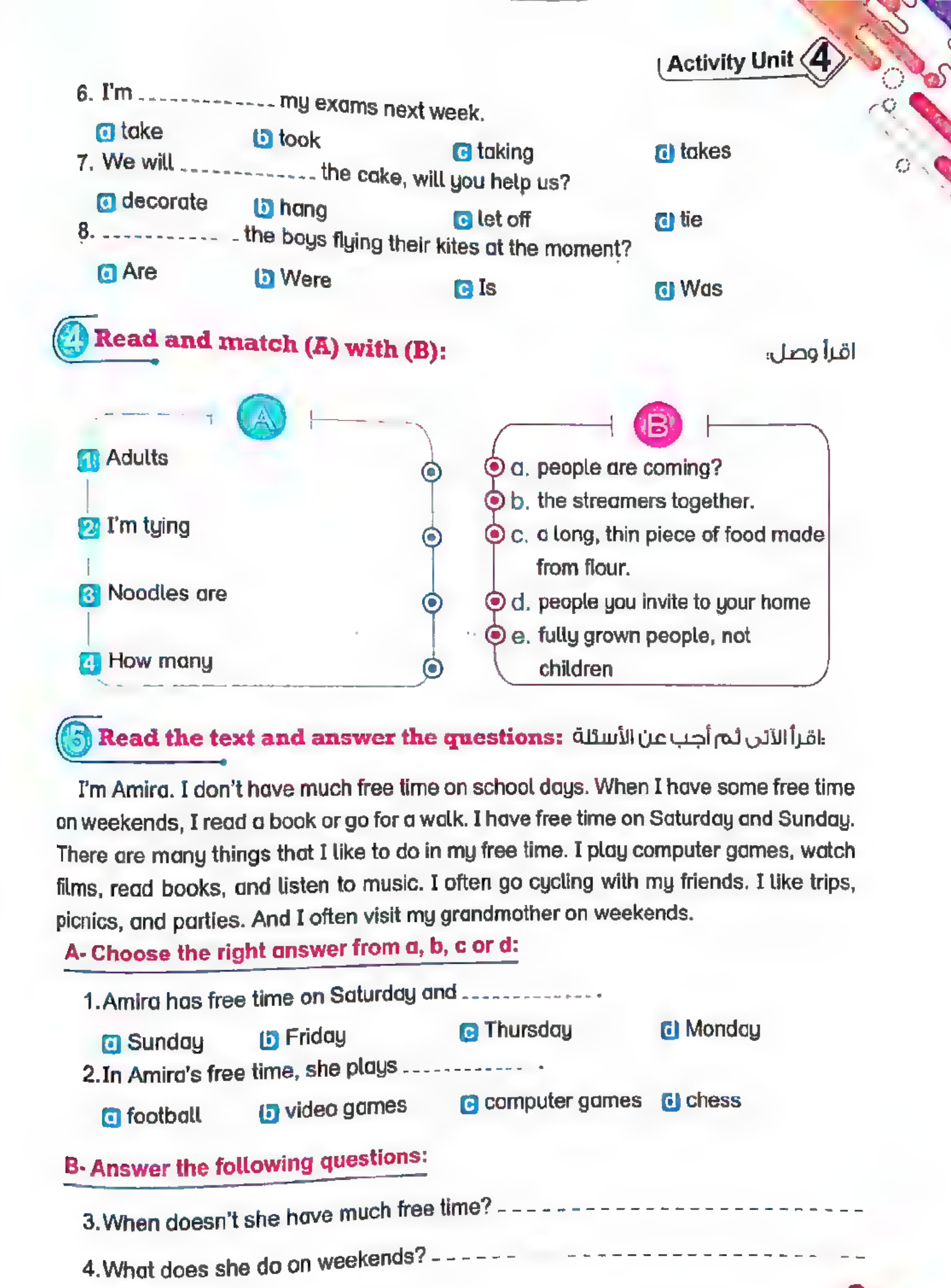
3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The boy is very happy when he is ------------ out the candles.
   a blows   b blowing   c blew   d blow
2. What ------------ you reading?
   a am   b is   c are   d does
3. I'm ------------ up the balloons.
   a sending   b tying   c decorating   d blowing
4. We ------------ my birthday in the club yesterday.
   a celebrated   b invited   c produced   d included
5. I'm ------------ a big party tomorrow.
   a making   b taking   c having   d doing

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



6. I'm .... my exams next week.

a take b took c taking d takes

7. We will .... the cake, will you help us?

a decorate b hang c let off d tie

8. .... the boys flying their kites at the moment?

a Are b Were c Is d Was

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Adults	a. people are coming?
2 I'm tying	b. the streamers together.
3 Noodles are	c. a long, thin piece of food made from flour.
4 How many	d. people you invite to your home
	e. fully grown people, not children

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Amira. I don't have much free time on school days. When I have some free time on weekends, I read a book or go for a walk. I have free time on Saturday and Sunday. There are many things that I like to do in my free time. I play computer games, watch films, read books, and listen to music. I often go cycling with my friends. I like trips, picnics, and parties. And I often visit my grandmother on weekends.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amira has free time on Saturday and ....

a Sunday b Friday c Thursday d Monday

2. In Amira's free time, she plays ....

a football b video games c computer games d chess

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When doesn't she have much free time? ....

4. What does she do on weekends? ....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. I'm .... (read) a story at the moment.
2. A lot of people .... (watch) the match today.
3. .... (Is) the students cleaning their class now?
4. Noha .... (is) eating at the moment, she's doing exercise.

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. food - children - like - Most - party.

....

2. birthday - decorating - the - They're - cake.

....

3. you - up - Can - balloons - some - blow?

....

4. attended - I - last - a - big - week - party.

....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Getting ready for the exams

hard - revision

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. it s my birthday

....

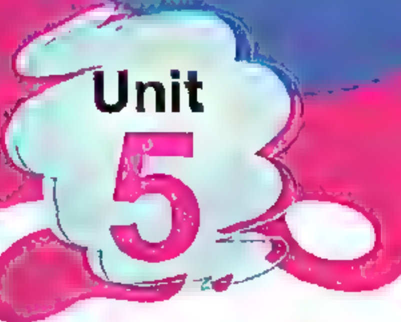
2. what re you doing this week

....





Myself and others



Amazing journeys

رحلات مدهشة









Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن مشاهير الرحالة في الماضي.

2. Talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

   - يتحدث الطالب عن الأشياء التي حدثت في الماضي باستخدام الأفعال الشاذة الشائعة.

3. Understand the difference between the sounds /dʒ/ and /ʒ/.

   - يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الأصوات /dʒ/ و /ʒ/

4. Listen to understand specific details in a text.

   - يستمع الطالب ليفهم تفاصيل محددة في النص.

5. Write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

   - يكتب الطالب يوميات للتعبير عن المشاعر والمزاج.

6. Research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

   - يبحث الطالب ويقوم بعمل ملصق عن رحالة مشهور.





Lesson 1

He went by ship

استمع الى المفردات.

Key vocabulary


ride a camel
يركب الجمل


travel by train
يسافر بالقطار


sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة

traveling expressions
تعبيرات السفر


go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة


go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية

diary	مفكرة يومية / مذكرة
trip	رحلة قصيرة
voyage	رحلة بحرية

Famous explorers مستكشفون مشهورون



Ibn Battuta (1304–1368)	ابن بطوطة
Marco Polo (1254–1324)	ماركو بولو
Vasco da Gama (1460–1524)	فاسكو دا جاما

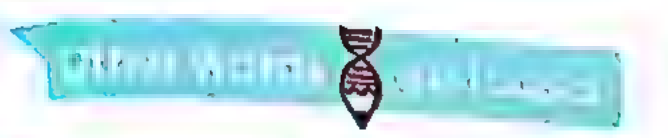
Famous places أماكن مشهورة



China	الصين
Croatia	كرواتيا
Hormuz	مدينة هرمز
Iran	إيران
Korcula	جزيرة كورتشولا (فى كرواتيا)
Venice	مدينة فينيسيا الايطالية



Help your child learn about traveling expressions. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن تعبيرات السفر الأسئلة.



adventure	مغامرة
century	قرن
different	مختلف
difficult	صعب
experiences	تجارب خيانية
explorer	مستكشف
far away	بعيد

Italian	إيطالي
museum	متحف
travel diary	مذكرات السفر
travels	رحلات / سفريات
vacation	إجازة
the West	الغرب
poem	قصيدة شعرية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
sail	يبحر	sailed
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fly	يطير	flew
ride	يركب	rode
read	يقرأ	read

Study the following

1. What was your favorite thing about the vacation? ماذا كان أفضل شئ في الأجازة؟
2. The museum is on an island called Korcula. يقع المتحف في جزيرة تسمى كورتشولا.
3. The museum is all about the travels of Marco Polo.
   المتحف مخصص فقط لرحلات ماركو بولو.
4. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. كان ماركو بولو مستكشفًا إيطاليًا.
5. He is one of the first people from the West to visit China.
   إنه من أوائل الناس الذين زاروا الصين من الغرب.
6. Marco Polo went to China in the 13th century.
   ذهب ماركو بولو إلى الصين في القرن الثالث عشر.

7 Marco Polo wrote a diary about his experiences.

كتب ماركو بولو يوميات عن تجاربه.

8 How did people get to China in those days?

كيف وصل الناس إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟

9 Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة بحرية طويلة.

10 The museum had a lot of things from ancient China.

كان المتحف يحتوي على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة.

11 I went to Dahab with my grandparents. We went for a week.

ذهبت إلى دهب مع أجدادي. ذهبنا لمدة أسبوع.

12 I went to Hurghada with my family. We went by bus.

ذهبت إلى الغردقة مع عائلتي. ذهبنا بالأتوبيس.



Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

journey, trip, and voyage

- He goes on a long journey to India. — رحلة طويلة (journey)
- They went on a day trip to the beach. — رحلة قصيرة (trip)
- The ship made a voyage across the Red Sea. — رحلة بحرية (voyage)

1 **Do you know these famous explorers from the past? Where did they go? Why are they all famous? Discuss**

هل تعرف هؤلاء المستكشفين المشهورين من الماضي؟ أين ذهبوا؟ لماذا كلهم مشهورين؟ ناقش.

1

Ibn Battuta
1304–1368

2

Vasco da Gama
1460–1524

3

Marco Polo
1254–1324





2 **Listen and read. Where did Injy go on vacation? What was her favorite thing during the trip?**

استمع واقرأ. أين ذهبت إنجي في الإجازة؟ ما كان أفضل شيء بالنسبة لها أثناء الرحلة؟


استمع إلى النص




نص الاستماع

Rana : What are you reading, Injy?

Injy : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember(1) my family's vacation(2) in Croatia(3) a few years ago.

Rana : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Injy : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

Rana : Really? Where is that?

Injy : It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula(4). We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum-all about the travels of Marco Polo.

Rana : Who was Marco Polo?

Injy : He was an Italian explorer(5) and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century(6) and wrote a diary(7) about his experiences(8). It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo.*

Rana : How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

Injy : It was very difficult(9) – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage(10) by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

Rana : Wow, what an adventure(11)!

Injy : Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

Arabic Meaning

١- يتذكر
٢- إجازة
٣- كرواتيا
٤- جزيرة كورتشولا
٥- مستكشف
٦- القرن الثالث عشر
٧- مذكرة
٨- تجارب حياتية
٩- صعب
١٠- رحلة بحرية
١١- مغامرة

3 **Read and write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences. Then listen and check (✓):** اقرأ واكتب T (صواب) أو F (خطأ). صحح الجمل الخاطئة :

1. The museum was about a famous traveler. | T |
2. He wrote a poem about his experiences.
3. He traveled all the way to China by train.
4. He went to China eight hundred years ago.
5. The museum had a lot of objects from ancient China.

4 **Complete the travel expressions with words from the text:**

أكمل تعبيرات السفر بكلمات من النص :

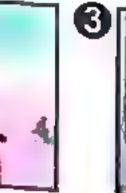
1. went on a journey
2. .... a camel
3. .... a trip
4. .... a voyage
5. .... by ship
6. .... by train

5 **Write expressions from Exercise 4 under the photos. Use the infinitive form without to:**

اكتب عبارات من التمرين (٤) تحت الصور. استخدم مصدر الفعل بدون to :

1 

go on a voyage

2 


....

3 

....

4 

....

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

تعد أطول رحلة سيرا على الأقدام كانت رحلة جورج ميجان من تييرا ديل فويجو في الأرجنتين إلى الاسكا. كان طول الطريق 30,608 كم واكمل رحلته في 2425 يومًا بين عامي 1977 و1983



1 Complete the dialog with the following words

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

explorer - Who - far - China

Lina : Let's read this book about Marco Polo.

Layan : ❶ ------------------------------ was Marco Polo?

Lina : He was an Italian ❷ ------------------------------.

Layan : Why was he a famous explorer?

Lina : Because he was one of the first people to visit ❸ ------------------.

Layan : I think it's very ❹ ------------------------------ away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tourists like to .... camels across the desert.
   a drive b cycle c ride d fly
2. A: .... was Marco Polo? B: He was an Italian explorer.
   a When b Who c How d Where
3. The Marco Polo .... is on an island called Korcula.
   a Museum b Park c School d Bank
4. Lina went on a long voyage by the ....
   a sea b hotel c desert d zoo

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 How did people get to	a. things from ancient China.
2 This museum had a lot of	b. about his experiences.
3 My family went on	c. is a good idea.
4 Marco Polo wrote a diary	d. vacation a few years ago.
	e. China in those days?

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Dear Amira,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to tell you about my last vacation. My last vacation was a five-day trip to Luxor. I know Luxor well because I have many friends there and I always visit them. On my last trip, I didn't stay in a hotel. I stayed with my friend, Esmat at her house. It was so much fun. We went to the shopping mall near her house. I was really happy to find my favorite cheese and chocolate biscuits, but they were a bit more expensive than I thought! We did some activities, too. We went to Abu Simbel Temple and walked around the temple. The views of the city are amazing there. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours,

Malak

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This email is about ....

   a Amira b last vacation c friends d temple

2. Malak stayed in her ....

   a hotel b friend's house c school d shopping mall

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How long was the trip? --

4. What did Malak find at the shopping mall? ------------------------------

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. an – explorer – Italian – Marco Polo – was.

----

2. my – went – with – I – grandparents – to Dahab.

----

3. get to – How – China – did – in those days – people?

----

4. your – about – What – favorite thing – the vacation – was?



Lesson 2 Part: 1 A surprising discovery




استمع الى المفردات.

advanced	متقدم
clay	صلصال
mystery	لغز
archaeologist	عالم آثار
inspiration	إلهام
tools	أدوات
sculpture	تمثال منحوت

Other words



works of art	أعمال فنية
civilization	حضارة
complicated hair styles	قصات شعر متشابك
humans	البشر
BCE	قبل الميلاد
CE	بعد الميلاد
Ife people	شعب الأيفي (في نيجيريا قديمًا)
iron farming tools	أدوات زراعية من الحديد
incredible	لا يصدق / مدهش
information	معلومات
quality	جودة
sitting position	وضعية الجلوس
large eyes	عيون كبيرة
unusual objects	أشياء غير مألوفة
village of Nok	قرية نوك في نيجيريا
ability	قدرة
written	مكتوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
agree	يوافق	agreed
call after	يسمي باسم	called after

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
find	يجد	found
write	يكتب	wrote



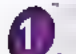
Unit 5 Amazing journeys

Definitions تعريفات

clay	صلصال	a type of earth that is sticky when wet
inspiration	إلهام	an example others use to help create new ideas
tools	أدوات	objects we use to make or do things
sculptures	منحوتات	art made from stone or wood
advanced	متقدم	modern or well developed
archaeologist	عالم آثار	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
mystery	لغز	something that people do not understand or cannot explain

Study the following

1. Almost 100 years ago, local people found some unusual objects under the ground.
منذ ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام وجد السكان المحليون بعض الأشياء الغير مألوفة تحت الأرض.
2. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans.
كانت هذه الأشياء عبارة عن تماثيل جميلة من الصلصال لبشر.
3. The sculptures were all in the same style. كانت جميع المنحوتات منحوتة بنفس الطريقة.
4. The sculptures had large eyes and complicated hair styles.
كانت عيون المنحوتات كبيرة وكان لها قصات شعر متشابكة.
5. They were in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.
كانت المنحوتات في وضع الجلوس وأيديهم على أرجلهم.
6. The quality of the work was incredible. كانت جودة العمل مدهشة.
7. Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.
ذهب علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لمعرفة المزيد.
8. There were iron and stone farming tools.
كانت هناك أدوات زراعية من الحديد والحجارة.
9. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads.
اشتهر شعب الأيفي بصنع تماثيل معدنية جميلة لرؤوس بشرية.
10. There is no written information about the Nok people.
لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب نوك.
11. We can learn about the Nok people from their art.
يمكننا التعرف على شعب نوك من أعمالهم الفنية.
12. Their culture is still a mystery today.
لا تزال ثقافتهم لغزا حتى اليوم.

Lesson 2

1 Listen and read. Which two cultures are mentioned?

استمع واقرأ. أي الثقافتين تم ذكرهم؟

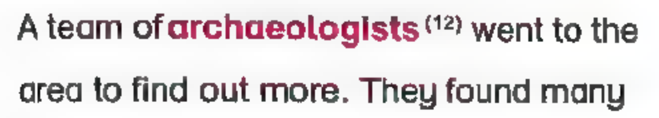




استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok(1) in Nigeria, a country in West Africa(2), found some unusual objects(3) under the ground. These objects(4) were beautiful **clay sculptures**(5) of humans(6). The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes(7) and complicated hair(8) styles. They were usually in a sitting position(9) with their hands on their legs. The quality(10) of the work was incredible(11).



A team of **archaeologists**(12) went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools(13). The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very **advanced** culture from around 500 BCE. to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

They called this culture the "Nok" civilization(14), after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the **inspiration**(15) for the famous works of art by the later Ife people(16), who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information(17) about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art(18). Their culture is still **a mystery**(19) today.

Arabic Meaning

١. قرية نوك
٢. غرب إفريقيا
٣. أشياء غير مألوفة
٤. أشياء
٥. منحوتات من الصلصال
٦. بشر
٧. عيون كبيرة
٨. شعر متشابك
٩. وضع الجلوس
١٠. جودة
١١. لا يصدق/مدهش
١٢. علماء الآثار
١٣. أدوات زراعية
١٤. حضارة
١٥. إلهام
١٦. شعب الأيفي
١٧. معلومات
١٨. عمل فني
١٩. لغز





2 Read and write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences then listen and check:

اقرأ واكتب T (صواب) أو F (خطأ). صحح الجمل الخاطئة ثم استمع وتأكد:

1. The objects found at Nok were metal sculptures. F
   They were clay sculptures.
2. Archaeologists were the first to find the sculptures. ☐
3. The sculptures had unusual hair and eyes. ☐
4. The Nok people's tools were all made of stone. ☐
5. The Nok were in Nigeria for about 1000 years. ☐
6. The only information we have about the Nok people comes from their art. ☐

3 Look at the bold words in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل في النص. قم بتوصيلهم بمعانيهم:

A

1. clay
2. inspiration
3. tools
4. sculptures
5. advanced
6. archaeologist
7. mystery

B

a. objects we use to make or do things.
b. art made from stone or wood.
c. modern or well developed.
d. a type of earth that is sticky when wet.
e. a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground.
f. something that people do not understand or cannot explain.
g. an example others use to help create new ideas.

Lesson 2 Part: 2 A surprising discovery



قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط



◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- My uncle visited us.



subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- My friend bought a new phone.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied.

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه d فقط :

- like → like(d) dance → dance(d)

- إذا لم ينتهي الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه ed،

- cook → cook(ed) play → play (ed)

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y يسبقه حرف ساكن نقوم بحذف حرف الـ y ونضيف ied،

- study → stud(ied) carry → carr(ied)

ثانيا: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي،

- go → went eat → ate



subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- We didn't go to the park. - Osama didn't play tennis.
- He never ate sushi.

4 Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة؟

- Did you change your phone?

◉ وتكون الاجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي،

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.
- When did you travel to London? - I traveled two years ago.



Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday / last (week / month / year) / ago / in the past / in + year (in 2010)

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

Verb to be in the past فعل يكون فى الماضى

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- In the past, there were no cars.
- Ashraf was born in 1989.

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط:

- Shady and Martin didn't be at school yesterday. (x)
- Shady and Martin weren't at school yesterday. (√)
- Did Adam be with his father? (x)
- Was Adam with his father? (√)

1 Circle the correct words to complete the text:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة لإكمال النص:

The area where the Nok people lived ❶ was / were in Nigeria. People ❷ found / find sculptures in this area, and archaeologists ❸ go / went there to study them. The Nok culture was advanced, and its people ❹ make / made sculptures from clay, and tools from stone and iron. Their sculptures were usually of humans. These ❺ was / were beautifully made and ❻ had / has unusual eyes and hair styles. There is no written information about the Nok culture, so we don't know much about the people even now.

2 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verb in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بصيغة الماضي البسيط للفعل بين القوسين:

1. Fares ....was......... angry with his brother yesterday. (be)
2. We .... a great time at the carnival! (have)
3. Jana and Gameela .... pizza for us last night. (make)
4. My family .... on vacation last year. (go)



5. Nader and Walid .... in my class last year. (be)
6. The archaeologists .... many old tools. (find)

3 Write sentences using the prompts. Use the past simple of verbs:

كون جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات. قم بصياغة الأفعال في الماضي البسيط:

1. she / go / to the library / last week
- -

2. he / be / very happy
- -

3. they / make / a cake
- -

4. he / have / a lot of homework
- -

4 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hany didn't (go) / went on the palace tour with the guide.
2. Did your mom made / make your dress, Leila? Yes, she did / didn't.
3. We didn't have / had a good meal in that restaurant.
4. The water in the sea weren't / wasn't warm.
5. Where did you find / found your books? They was / were in my bag.

5 Complete the dialog with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets:

أكمل الحوار بصيغة الماضي البسيط للفعل بين القوسين:

Sameh : How ❶ ....was.......... your trip, Kareem? (be)

Kareem : It ❷ .... really good, thanks. (be) We ❸ .... to the Western Desert. (go)

Sameh : Wow! ❹ .... you .... with your parents? (go)

Kareem : No, I ❺ .... with my uncle. (be) We ❻ .... some very nice places. (find)

Sameh : ❼ .... there any other children on the trip? (be)

Kareem : No, there ❽ .... (be) But I ❾ .... fun! (have)

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nok is a small .... in Nigeria.
   a city b country c village d continent
2. We didn't .... a good meal in that restaurant.
   a has b had c have d having
3. A/An .... is a person who studies very old objects.
   a engineer b teacher c archaeologist d farmer
4. I .... my book, it was under the desk.
   a find b finds c found d finding
5. We didn't .... to school yesterday.
   a go b went c goes d going
6. She .... sad because she lost her toy.
   a is b was c be d were
7. Mom .... us a chocolate cake last night.
   a made b make c making d makes
8. Ahmed .... to Aswan last year.
   a travel b traveled c traveling d travels
9. .... you go to the park yesterday?
   a Do b Are c Does d Did

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. Ahmed and Omar .... (was) in the park yesterday.
2. I went to the zoo but I .... (don't) see the lion.
3. She .... (finds) the keys under the chair yesterday.
4. .... (Is) he happy in Aswan last year?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:







(A)	(B)
1 Local people found unusual	a. use to help create new ideas.
2 An inspiration is an example others	b. unusual large eyes.
3 The Nok people's tools were	c. made of stone and iron.
4 The sculptures were all had	d. in the same style.
	e. objects under the ground.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

I traveled to Egypt last year with my family to see the Giza Pyramids. A guide helped us to explore the Great Pyramid of Khufu because we were amazed by the ancient culture. <u>We</u> looked at the hieroglyphics inside and discovered that the ancient Egyptians were able to build these huge pyramids. We also went to the Sphinx and learned about its importance. We were very excited and hoped to visit more historical sites next time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "We" refers to ....
   - a the family
   - b Pyramids
   - c the Sphinx
   - d hieroglyphics
2. A .... helps us explore the Great Pyramid of Khufu.
   - a doctor
   - b teacher
   - c guide
   - d nurse

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did you travel to Egypt? ------------------------------
4. What did you learn about the Sphinx? ------------------------------

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. your - trip - How - , Kareem - was?

----

2. were - style - the same - all - in - The sculptures.

----

3. a mystery - culture - Their - still - today - is.

----

4. went to - find out - the area - Archaeologists - to - more.



Part: 1 Marco Polo crosses the desert




Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.

caravan	قافلة
fascinated	منبهر
sway	يتأرجح
wander	يتجول
wasteland	الأرض القاحلة / البور
legend	قصة خرافية / اسطورة

Adjectives & Adverbs صفات وأحوال

Adjective صفة

dangerous	خطير
empty	فارغ
lost	تائه
frightening	مخيف
mysterious	غامض

Adverb حال

silently	بصمت
slowly	ببطء

Other words

adventure	مغامرة
Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي
horizon	الأفق
last	يدوم / أخير
Lop Nur	صحراء لوب نور (في الصين)
dromedaries	جمال(وحيدة السنام)
Noah Oasis	واحة نوح
sand dunes	كثبان رملية
waves	أمواج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
move	يتحرك	moved
roll	يلف / يتدحرج	rolled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
know	يعرف	knew
can	يستطيع	could
lose	يضل / يتوه	lost



Definitions التعريفات

Word	Arabic	Definition
fascinated by	منبهر بـ	very interested in
caravan	قافلة	a group of camels and people traveling together
swaying	متأرجح	moving from side to side
wasteland	أرض قاحلة / بور	a landscape where nothing lives
wandered	تجول	walked about without a direction
legend	قصة خرافية	a very old and famous story

Study the following

1. **Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert.**

   كان ماركو بولو في الحادية والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب إلى صحراء جوبي.

2. **He was fascinated by the sand dunes.** كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية.

3. **Sand dunes moved with each step the camels made.**

   تحركت الكثبان الرملية مع كل خطوة اتخذتها الجمال.

4. **The wind made them move and roll like huge waves.**

   جعلتهم الرياح يتحركون ويتدحرجون مثل الأمواج الهائلة.

5. **Local people called the Gobi Desert the dry sea.**

   أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي "البحر الجاف".

6. **It was a mysterious and dangerous place.** كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا.

7. **By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold.**

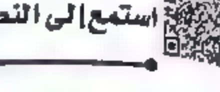
   في النهار، كان الجو يغلي، وفي الليل، كان البرد قارسًا.

8. **There were many strange legends about this desert.**

   كان هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة عن هذه الصحراء.

1 Listen and read. What did the desert look like to Marco Polo? Why?

استمع واقرأ. كيف كانت تبدو الصحراء لماركو بولو، لماذا؟



Tapescript  نص الاستماع

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert(1) for the first time. He was fascinated(2) by the sand dunes(3) which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes(4) were always changing. The wind made them move and roll(5) like huge yellow waves(6). In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

The dromedaries(7) in the caravan(8) moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying(9) like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur(10), the last village before the empty wasteland(11) of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious(12) and dangerous(13) place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently(14), but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends(15) about this desert. People said that travelers(16) who were lost long ago in the desert wandered(17) there still ...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last(18) for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening(19), empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis(20) on the horizon(21). They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted(22), but their desert adventure(23) was over. They were in China!

Arabic Meaning

١- صحراء جوبي
٢- منبهر
٣- كثبان رملية
٤- اشكال
٥- يتدحرج
٦- أمواج
٧- جمال احادية السنم
٨- قافلة
٩- متارجح
١٠- صحراء لوب نور
١١- الأرض القاحلة
١٢- غامض
١٣- خطير
١٤- بصمت
١٥- أساطير
١٦- مسافرون
١٧- تجولوا
١٨- يدوم
١٩- مخيف
٢٠- واحة نوح
٢١- الأفق
٢٢- منهك
٢٣- مغامرة

لاحظ
الصفات والاحوال فى النص وتعلم اهمية استخدامهم حيث تساعد القارئ على تخيل ما يحدث وتساعد القارئ ايضا فى فهم كيف تشعر الشخصيات.





2 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings.

انظر الى الكلمات المكتوبة بخط اسود عريض في النص. قم بتوصيلهم بمعانيهم.

A	B
1 fascinated by	a. moving from side to side
2 caravan	b. a very old and famous story
3 swaying	c. very interested in
4 wasteland	d. walked about without a direction
5 wandered	e. a group of camels and people traveling together
6 legend	f. a landscape where nothing lives

3 Read again and answer the questions:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة :

1. How big were the sand dunes in the Gobi Desert?

   They were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long.

2. What was the name the local people called this desert?

   ---

3. What moved like big ships over the ocean?

   ---

4. What was the weather like there?

   ---

5. What was strange about the wind?

   ---

6. How long were they in the desert?

Lesson 3 Part: 2

The Mysterious Land

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

light of a candle	ضوء شمعة
comes up	تشرق (الشمس)
palm trees	أشجار النخيل
perhaps	ربما
exhausted	مرهق
terrible	فظيع / سيئ
island	جزيرة

port	ميناء
telescope	تلسكوب
the captain	القائد
small cabin	حجرة صغيرة
writer	كاتب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
last	يدوم	lasted
seem	يبدو	seemed

Study the following

1. Today was a long boring day with terrible weather.
   كان اليوم يومًا طويلًا مملًا مع طقس سيئ.
2. My journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible.
   لم تكن رحلتي إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة.
3. I can see the island through my telescope.
   أستطيع أن أرى الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بي.
4. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees.
   الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية وبها العديد من أشجار النخيل.
5. There are green mountains at its center.
   هناك جبال خضراء في وسطها.
6. I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night.
   لقد نمت هادئًا في حجرتي الليلة الماضية.
7. I had breakfast with the others on the ship.
   تناولت الإفطار مع الآخرين على متن السفينة.

1 **Listen and read to the page from an 18th century writer's diary. Where was he when wrote it?**

استمع واقرأ صفحة من يوميات كاتب من القرن الثامن عشر. أين كان عندما كتبه؟


استمع إلى النص:




نص الاستماع

THE MYSTERIOUS LAND

Day 1, January 17th

Today was a long, boring day with terrible(1) weather. The ship didn't leave the port(2), so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible – I can see the island through my telescope(3). The beaches are white and sandy(4) with many palm trees(5) and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

Arabic Meaning

١- سيئ
٢- ميناء
٣- تلسكوب
٤- رملي
٥- أشجار النخيل
٦- ضوء شمعة
٧- صغير
٨- حجرة/مقصورة
٩- ربما
١٠- القائد
١١- تشرق

Day 2, January 19th

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle(6) in my small(7) cabin(8). Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey perhaps(9) – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

Day 3, January 21st

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain(10): tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up(11). I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!



Unit 5

Listen gain and complete the sentences. استمع مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل.

1. The writer feels .... on Day 1 because the ship can't ....
2. The write wants to go to ....
3. The writer can see it through his ....
4. The island has .... beaches with many ....
5. At the center of the island, there are ....
6. On Day 2, the writer spends his time ....
7. The writer feels ....on Day 3.
8. The ship will leave the .... on Day 4.













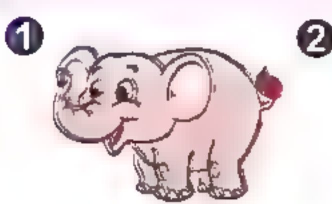
/ʒ/

usually عادة
leisure رفاهية
pleasure سرور



1 Look, listen, and repeat:

انظر واسمع وردد


1 huge


2 fridge


3 measure


4 treasure

2 Listen. Underline the sound /dʒ/ or /ʒ/. Then write the words in the correct column in the table.

استمع. ضع خط تحت الصوت /dʒ/ أو /ʒ/ . ثم اكتب الكلمات في العمود الصحيح في الجدول.

1. usually 2. age 3. joke
4. leisure 5. Asia 6. dangerous
7. language 8. television 9. cage

/dʒ/	/ʒ/
age	television

3 Listen, read, and repeat:

استمع واقرأ وردد.

1. The bridge in the village is damaged and dangerous.
2. On television, they said that in Asia they found too much treasure to measure.
3. Jerry just arranged to send his luggage to Japan.
4. I usually play games for leisure and pleasure.

Activities



1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

1. Marco Polo went to many .... he didn't know.
2. He was amazed and .... by the world.
3. .... teaches us to keep an open mind.
4. Marco Polo didn't want others to be .... him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can ride .... across the desert.
   - a ships
   - b dromedaries
   - c boats
   - d shops
2. Marco Polo used his.............................. to see the island.
   - a microscope
   - b caravan
   - c telescope
   - d nightmare
3. .... are groups of camels and people traveling together.
   - a Islands
   - b Oases
   - c Sand dunes
   - d Caravans
4. The ship left the .... to travel to the island.
   - a airport
   - b port
   - c station
   - d bus stop

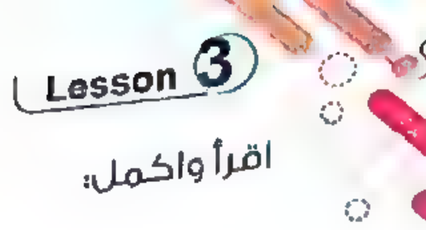
3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Fascinated by means to be	a. where nothing lives.
2 To wander is to	b. with terrible weather.
3 Today was a long boring day,	c. walk about without a direction .
4 A wasteland is a landscape	d. very interested in.
	e. old and famous story.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





4 Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

legends - fascinated - weather - explorer

I read an interesting book about Marco Polo. He was a famous ① ....
He was ② .... by the sand dunes. He loved the desert. There were many strange ③ .... about the desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. fascinated - sand dunes - He - by - was - the.

....

2. had breakfast - the ship - with - I - the others - on.

....

3. can - island - explore - I - the mysteries.

....

4. Gobi Desert - Local people - the dry - called - the - sea.

....

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

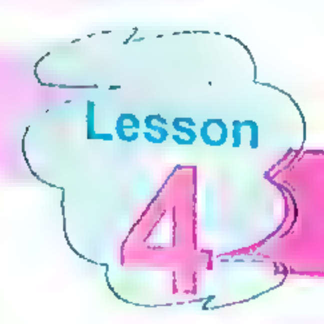
مجاب آخر الوحدة

A Journey you went in the past

Guiding questions

1- Where did you go?
2- How did you feel?

....
....
....
....
....
....



★ Writing



 استمع إلى المفردات.

sail	شراع
skills	مهارات
magical	سحري

Adjectives صفات



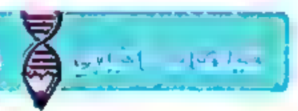
amazing	مدهش
awesome	مذهل
delicious	لذيذ
difficult	صعب
huge	ضخم
incredible	لا يصدق
lovely	جميل
peaceful	هادئ/ ساكن/ آمن
quiet	هادئ
relaxing	مريح
traditional	تقليدي
wonderful	رائع

Adverbs أحوال



beautifully	بطريقة جميلة
gently	بلطف / برفق

Other words



experience	تجربة حياتية
captain	قائد
felucca	مركب شراعي
sunshine	شروق الشمس



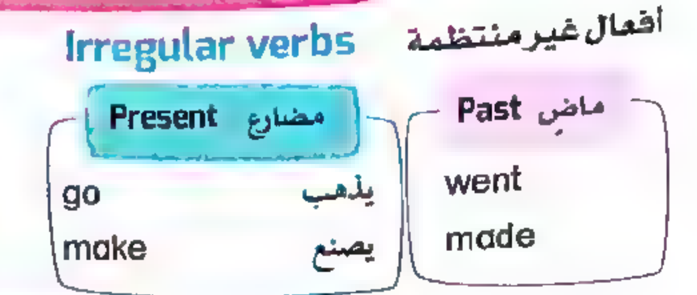
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
sail	يبحر	sailed
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
go	يذهب	went
make	يصنع	made

Definitions تعريفات

skills	مهارات	the ability to deal with something well
sails	أشرعة	a large piece of cloth on a boat that makes the wind push the boat
magical	سحري	very enjoyable and exciting
felucca	مركب شراعي	a traditonal Egyptian sailing boat.

Study the following

1. Today I had an amazing experience. اليوم مررت بتجربة رائعة.
2. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! ذهبت في فلوكة في نهر النيل!
3. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. الفلوكة هو قارب شراعي مصري تقليدي (قديم).
4. A felucca is difficult to sail. يصعب الإبحار بالفلوكة.
5. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. نزلنا ببطء أسفل النهر تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة.
6. The boat had two white sails. كان للقارب شراعان أبيضان.
7. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel. كانت هادئة وآمنة – طريقة رائعة للسفر.
8. We stopped to see some incredible things along the way. توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء الرائعة على طول الطريق.
9. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة في حياتي.


استمع إلى النص،

6 January

Today, I had an amazing experience [1]... I went on a felucca [2] on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional [3] Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain [4] of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine [5]. The boat had two white sails which moved gently [6] in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful [7]– a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible [8] things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome [9]! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful [10].

In the afternoon, we had a delicious [11] lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully [12] and the music was magical [13] and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

Arabic Meaning

١- تجربة مدهشة
٢- مركب شراعي
٣- تقليدي
٤- قائد
٥- إشراقة دافئة
٦- برفق
٧- ساكنة وآمنة
٨- لا يصدق
٩- مدهش
١٠- رائع
١١- لذيذ
١٢- بطريقة جميلة
١٣- سحري

4 **Read the diary entry again and answer the questions. Write full sentences:** اقرأ اليومية مرة أخرى وأجب على الأسئلة. اكتب جمل كاملة.

1. Where did the writer go?
   The writer went on a trip down the River Nile on a felucca.
2. How does the writer describe the captain of the boat?
   ----
3. What was the mood on the boat?
   ----
4. What did the writer think of the Great Pyramid?
   ----
5. What did they do in the afternoon?
   ----
6. What was the music like?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went on a .... on the River Nile.

a car b felucca c bus d taxi

2. Our trip to Aswan was .... We were all happy.

a amazing b bad c terrible d sad

3. The Pyramids in Giza were ....

a small b tiny c huge d not big

4. The .... sailed the ship to the shore.

a teacher b captain c nurse d vet

2 Read and complete: اقرأ واكمل:

skills - captain – felucca - plane

Today, I had an incredible experience sailing on a ① .... on the River Nile. The ② .... of the felucca is called Kareem. He was very strong and had the ③ .... to sail it.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. has - white - two - The boat - sails

....

2. had - experience - Today - an amazing - I.

....

3. Egyptian - A felucca - sailing - boat - a traditional - is.

4. had - We - lunch - a delicious - on board - felucca - the



4 Write a diary entry of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مذكرة من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

a diary entry

Guiding questions

1- How and when did you go there?
2- What was the weather like?

6 January





Review

Key vocabulary



ride a camel
يركب الجمل



travel by train
يسافر بالقطار



sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة



go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية



take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة

advanced	متقدم
sculptures	منحوتات
clay	صلصال
archaeologist	عالم آثار
caravan	قافلة
fascinated	منبهر
adventure	مغامرة
exhausted	مرهق
terrible	فظيع / سيء
inspiration	إلهام

tool	أداة
sway	يتأرجح
wander	يتجول
wasteland	الأرض القاحلة / البور
legend	قصة خرافية
port	ميناء
telescope	تليسكوب
small cabin	حجرة صغيرة
felucca	قارب شراعي

Adverbs

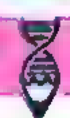


beautifully	بطريقة جميلة
silently	بصمت

gently	بلطف / برفق
slowly	بطريقة بطيئة

Help your child revise Unit 5. ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.





Adjectives صفات

dangerous	خطير	peaceful	هادئ / آمن / ساكن
empty	فارغ	relaxing	مريح
lost	تائه	huge	ضخم
mysterious	غامض	incredible	لا يصدق
awesome	مذهل	lovely	جميل
difficult	صعب	traditional	تقليدي
magical	سحري		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
sail	يبحر	sailed
call after	يسمي بإسم	called
move	يتحرك	moved
roll	يلف / يتدحرج	rolled
last	يدوم	lasted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fly	يطير	flew
ride	يركب	rode
say	يقول	said
leave	يغادر	left
lose	يتوه / يضل	lost
know	يعرف	knew

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- My uncle visited us.

2 Form التكوين



subject فاعل + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة



- My friend bought a new phone.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني إلى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

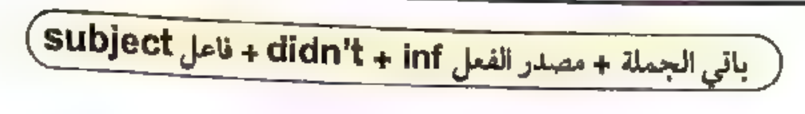
أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ (d ,ed ,ied).

- like → like(d) - cook → cook(ed) - study → stud(ied)

ثانيا: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- go ➔ went   eat ➔ ate
- We studied our science lesson.
- She went to the theme park.
- He met his friend Ayman.




subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- We didn't go to the park.
- Osama never played tennis.



(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة?

- Did you change your phone?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي

- Yes, I did.   - No, I didn't.
- When did you travel to London?
- I traveled two years ago.



yesterday / last (week / month / year) / ago /
in the past / in + year - in (2010)

- He went to Giza city last week.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails / diaries

Lesson 3

A Journey you went in the past

① I went to the beach, and it was wonderful! The sand was soft and warm. The soft wind touched my face. It was nice. I enjoyed making sandcastles. The sun was shining, and I enjoyed swimming in the water. It was a beautiful day at the beach.

Lesson 4

A diary entry

② **Dear Diary,**

Today was an exciting day! I went on a trip to a beautiful place. The place was wonderful, with mountains and rivers all around. We took a taxi and reached an amazing place. I took lots of pictures with my friends. It was an amazing trip that I will remember.

Al-Azhar Test

A trip on the River Nile

③ I went on a trip down the River Nile. I went by felucca. The felucca was difficult to sail, but a tall man called Samy was the captain of the boat. He was very strong and had the skills to sail it. We went down the river in the warm sunshine.

Activity Unit 5

④ **New Message**

To	laila33@hot.mail.com	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	fatma14@gmail.com	
Subject	Marco Polo - A famous traveler	

Dear Laila,

Thanks for your last email. How are you? I want to tell you about the famous traveler Marco Polo. He was born in the 13th century. He was famous for his great journey to Asia and his adventures and experiences with different cultures. His journeys were very fantastic.

Best wishes,

Fatma

Al-Azhar Test



الأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- .... I had an amazing experience.

a) Yesterday b) Today c) Last Friday

2- There was a .... playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud.

a) man b) woman c) baby

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

see - felucca - went

A : Where did you go yesterday?

B : I .... on the Nile River!

A : What did you .... there?

B : I saw a ....

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Ahmed had a relaxing sleep in his cabin last night, and this morning he had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: he says that tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. Ahmed is very excited.

Choose the correct answer:

1- Ahmed had a relaxing sleep in his ....

a) bedroom b) cabin c) garden

2- This morning he had ....

a) dinner b) breakfast c) lunch

3- The .... says that tomorrow the weather will be good.

a) teacher b) doctor c) captain

4- The .... will leave when the sun comes up.

a) ship b) train c) bus

5- Ahmed is very ....

a happy   b sad   c excited

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hani didn't .... on the palace tour with the guide.
   a go   b went   c goes
2. A gold is type of..............
   a wood   b metal   c juice
3. Fares.............. angry with his brother yesterday.
   a is   b were   c was
4. The weather was still .... and there were strong winds.
   a terrible   b nice   c fine
5. We didn't .... a vacation this year.
   a has   b had   c have

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - How - there - did - travel?

....

2. was - Where - last - your - vacation?

....

3. was - a famous - The - about - museum - traveler.

....

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A trip on the River Nile

....

....

....

....

....







1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)



		True	False
1	Mrs. Esraa is a teacher of Arabic.		
2	She likes traveling to different places.		
3	She has two children.		
4	Mrs. Esraa went to Giza and visited the Egyptian Museum.		

2 Complete the dialogue with the following words:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

see - felucca - traditional - Pyramids

Shady : What did you do today?

Adam : I went on a (1) ------------------------------ on the River Nile.

Shady : What is a felucca?

Adam : A felucca is a (2) ---------- - Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

Shady : What did you (3) ---------------------------------- on your trip?

Adam : I saw the (4) -------- -- of Giza, the Sphinx, and some other temples.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
   a) bus b) car c) felucca d) train
2. Where .... you yesterday?
   a) was b) were c) did d) had
3. Marco Polo was an Italian ....
   a) archeologist b) explorer c) scientist d) architect
4. Where did you .... your books?
   a) find b) found c) finding d) finds
5. The weather was .... , so the ship didn't leave the port.
   a) terrible b) cool c) amazing d) exciting

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. A .... is a very old and famous story.
a caravan b legend c landscape d port

7. I .... such a wonderful experience yesterday.
a have b having c had d has

8. I .... to Hurghada with my family last week.
a go b went c going d goes

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form:

إكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. They .... (go) to the desert in 1275.
2. .... (Be) you happy in the park yesterday?
3. She .... (don't) read a story last week.
4. I .... (have) a good meal but I was hungry.

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 What is your	a. a camel all the way to China
2 He rode	b. is the tallest of the three pyramids.
3 There is no	c. damaged.
4 The Great Pyramid	d. favorite thing about the vacation?
	e. written information about Nok people.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

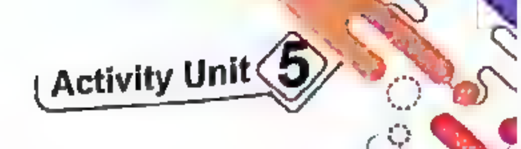
اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I had a wonderful time in Alexandria. I went **there** by train. My family took the train to Alexandria. My best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea early in the morning. My family liked to swim in the sea. We met my father's friend Mr Mustafa and his family. We played together on the beach. I built a huge sandcastle. The trip was amazing.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....
a Cairo b Alexandria c beach d sandcastle

2. The family liked to swim in the ....
a river b lake c sea d canal



B- Answer the following questions:

3. How did they travel to Alexandria? ------------------------------
4. Who did they meet during the trip? ------------------------------

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. had – I – a relaxing – in my cabin – sleep. ------------------------
2. was – He – explorer – Italian – an. ------------------------
3. other – Were – children – there – on – any – the trip? ------------------------
4. on - a felucca – the Nile – on – I – River – went. ------------------------

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Laila to tell her about a famous traveler. Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma14@gmail.com and your friend's email address is laila33@hotmail.com.

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- Who is the traveler?
2- Why was he famous?

New Message

Cc Bcc

To ....

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following sentences:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. how was your trip Kareem ------------------------
2. marco polo was a famous traveler ------------------------



Unit 6

Taking care

العناية بالنفس







Objectives of the unit ...

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of one's self.

   يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن صنع الأشياء في المنزل وكيفية الاعتناء بالنفس.

2. Talk about quantities. يتحدث الطالب عن الكميات.
3. Find the meaning of words in a text.

   يجد الطالب معنى الكلمات في النص.

4. Learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.

   يتعلم الطالب عن العناية الشخصية في مصر القديمة.

5. Write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients. يكتب الطالب التعليمات لصنع شيء وكميات المقادير.
6. Research and create a poster about different spices.

   يبحث الطالب ويعمل ملصق عن التوابل المختلفة.









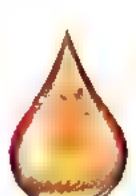
Let's make candles!






perfume oil
زيت عطري


wax
مادة الشمع


drop
قطرة

making candles
صناعة الشمع


wick
فتيل (الشمعة)


popsicle sticks
عصي الايس كريم

Important verbs أفعال هامة


heat (ed)
يسخن


squeeze (d)
يعصر


press (ed)
يضغط

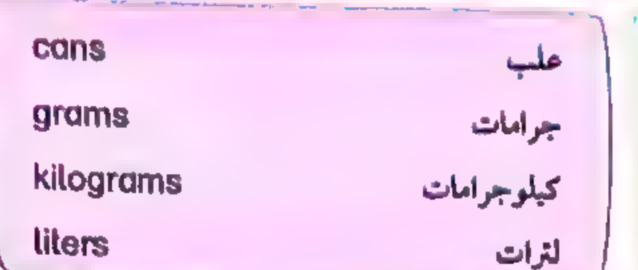

stir (red)
يقلب



Help your child learn new words about making candles. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة عن صناعة الشمع

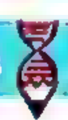


Words about measurement



cans	علب
grams	جرامات
kilograms	كيلوجرامات
liters	لترات
milliliters	ملليلترات
packages	حزم / رزم / عبوات
spoons	ملاعق
glasses	زجاجات

Other words



candle	شمعة
wooden	خشبي
hard	صلب
cooker	بوتاجاز / موقد
ingredients	مكونات
container	وعاء
flower petal	بتلات (أوراق الزهرة)
instructions	تعليمات
in mind	في ذهنك
lemon oil	زيت الليمون
palm trees	أشجار النخيل
cotton rope	حبل من القطن
step	خطوة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
need	يحتاج	needed
use	يستخدم	used
add	يضيف	added

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
smell	يشم / يصدر رائحة	smelt / smelled
hold up	يمسك لأعلى	held up
make	يصنع	made
read out	يقرأ بصوت عالٍ	read out

Definitions التعريفات

wick فتيل: the little cotton rope inside the candle





Lesson 1

Study the following

1. I love making things. أحب صنع الأشياء.
2. Do you have something in mind? هل يوجد شيء في تفكيرك (ذهنك)؟
3. Here are the instructions for making the candles. ها هي تعليمات صنع الشموع.
4. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. إنه شمع النخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية.
5. How much do we need? كم الكمية التي نحتاجها؟
6. We need some perfume oil. نحتاج إلى بعض الزيوت العطرية.
7. These are little bottles of lemon oil. هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون.
8. Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil. اعصر حوالي ٤٠ قطرة من الزيت.
9. We need one glass for each candle and one wick.
   نحتاج كأسًا واحدًا وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة.
10. A wick is a little cotton rope inside the candle.
    الفتيل هو عبارة عن حبل قطني صغير داخل الشمعة.
11. We need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.
    نحتاج إلى بعض عصي الآيس كريم لتثبيت الفتائل في الأكواب.
12. Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well. سخن الشمع لإذابته ، ثم قلبه جيدًا.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1. Instruction إعطاء التعليمات

◎ عند إعطاء التعليمات، إما نبدأ بمصدر الفعل "inf" في حالة الأمر المثبت أو نبدأ بـ"Don't + inf" في حالة النهي:

- Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles.
- Don't forget your book, Sally.

2. How much? (كم الكمية؟) & How many? (كم العدد؟)

◎ للسؤال عن الكميات نستخدم How much?:

- How much wax do we need?

◎ للسؤال عن العدد نستخدم How many?:

- How many drops of oil do we need?



1 Listen and read. What do Laila and her mom make?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تصنع ليلى ووالدتها؟

استمع إلى النص: 




Tapescript نص الاستماع

Mom : Hi, Laila, I love making things. Why don't we make something now?

Laila : That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

Mom : I have some perfume oil(1). We can use it to make candles.

Laila : Candles? Wow! I love it.

Mom : Here are the instructions(2). Can you read them out to me?

Laila : Right. First, we need some wax(3).

Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees(4). It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

Laila : It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

Mom : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

Laila : We need some perfume oil.

Mom : Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil(5). Mmm ... they smell lovely(6). How much do we need?

Laila : The instructions say, "**Squeeze**(7) in about 40 **drops**(8) of oil."

Mom : Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and **press**(9) them on the tops of the candles.

Laila : Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one **wick**(10) – that's the little cotton rope(11) inside the candle.

Mom : Oh, yes. And we need some **popsicle sticks**(12) to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

Laila : So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

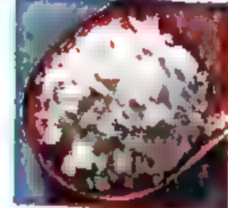
Mom : Let's see... "Step one(13): **Heat**(14) the wax to melt(15) it, then stir(16) it well."

Arabic Meaning

١. زيت عطري
٢. تعليمات
٣. مادة الشمع
٤. أشجار النخيل
٥. زيت الليمون
٦. يصدر رائحة جميلة
٧. أعصر
٨. قطرات
٩. يضغط
١٠. فتيل
١١. حبل من القطن
١٢. عصي الآيس كريم
١٣- الخطوة الأولى
١٤- قم بتسخين
١٥- يذيب
١٦- يقلب

2 Find the four nouns in bold in the text. Match them to the pictures:

ابحث عن الأسماء الثلاثة بالخط الأسود العريض في النص. قم بتوصيلهم بالصور:

1 
2 
3 
4 

1- ....
2- ....
3- ....
4- ....



3 **Listen and read again. Write the quantities Laila and her mom need of these things** استمع واقرأ مرة أخرى. اكتب الكميات التي تحتاجها ليلى ووالدتها من هذه الأشياء.

1. wax : ----------------
2. perfume oil : ----------------
3. flowers : ----------------
4. glasses : ----------------
5. popsicle sticks : ----------------

Tip!

When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

نصيحة! عندما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمات حول القياسات. على سبيل المثال، كيلوجرامات، جرامات، لترات، مليلترات، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.

4 **Now complete the instructions for making soap.**

الآن أكمل التعليمات لصنع الصابون.

add - bowl - heat - press - stir

1. Put the ingredients for your soap in a ❶ ----bowl-----
2. ❷ ------------ the ingredients on a cooker.
3. Next, ❸ ------------ the ingredients with a wooden spoon.
4. Take the ingredients off the cooker.
5. When the ingredients are hard and cool, ❹ ------------ them into a soap container.
6. You can ❺ ------------ flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt and makes it look shiny and healthy.

عندما تقوم بتمشيط شعرك، فذلك يقوم بتوزيع الزيوت الطبيعية من جلدك خلال شعرك من الجذور إلى الأطراف. وهذا يحمي شعرك من الحرارة والأتربة ويجعله يبدو لامعًا وصحيًا.



Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Candles are very important.		
2	We use them everywhere to get water.		
3	Some people use candles on special occasions.		
4	Some people use candles to decorate their shops.		

2 Complete the dialogue with the following words:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

grams – wax – much – palm

Rodina : What do we need for making candles?

Gana : We need some ❶ ---------------------------------------.

Rodina : How can we get wax?

Gana : From Egyptian ❷ ------------------------------- trees.

Rodina : How ❸ ---------------------------------- do we need?

Gana : We need 450 ❹ ------------------ of wax to make three candles.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If you .... ice, it melts.

   a freeze   b cut   c heat   d cool

2. Rain starts with small .... of water.

   a wax   b drops   c ropes   d candles

3. Palm .... makes really nice candles.

   a leaves   b wax   c trunks   d roots

4. Laila and her mom need some wax to make ....

   a cakes   b toys   c candles   d candies

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. We need some popsicle sticks
2. A wick is the little cotton rope
3. How much wax
4. Heat the wax

B

a. inside the candle.
b. do we need?
c. to hold the wicks up in the glasses.
d. to melt it.
e. make three candles.

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

perfume - soap - candles - wax

Many years ago, our homes didn't have electricity. People used 1 ---------- instead. Candles are made from 2 -------------- We can make candles at home. You need some 3 -------------- oil, some wax, one wick and popsicle sticks.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. oil - some - need - We - perfume. --
2. do - much - we - How - need - wax ? --
3. are - lemon oil - There - of - little bottles. --
4. are - Here - the - the instructions - candles - for making. --

7 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Making candles at home

wax - heat

----

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does sally make- --
2. that s three glasses- --

Lesson 2 ANCIENT EGYPTIANS

Part: 1 ATE WELL




استمع إلى المفردات.

paintings	رسومات / لوحات
barley	شعير
festivals	احتفالات
herbs	أعشاب
preserve(d)	يحفظ

The Nile floods	فيضانات النيل
garlic	ثوم
lentils	عدس
cream	قشطة
wheat	قمح
ducks	بط
goose (geese)	وزة (إوز)
figs	تين
salt	ملح
taste better	ذو مذاق أفضل
fruit drink	مشروب فاكهة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
depend on	يعتمد على	depended on
dry	يجفف	dried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take care of	يعتني بـ	took care of
grow	يزرع	grew
keep	يحافظ على	kept

Definitions تعريفات

barley	شعير	a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things
herbs	أعشاب	plants with a strong taste often used in cooking
festival	احتفال	a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food
preserve	يحفظ	add something to food to make it last for longer

Help your child find the meaning of words in a text. ساعد طفلك في أن يجد معاني الكلمات في نص.

Where food can come from:

من أين يأتى الطعام.

1. cream ⟶ cows
2. bread ⟶ wheat or barley
3. honey ⟶ bees
4. eggs ⟶ geese



Study the following

1. What did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

– ماذا كان يأكل ويشرب القدماء المصريين؟

2. Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people took care of their bodies and ate very well.

– تظهر رسومات المصريين القدماء أن الناس اعتنوا بأجسادهم وأكلوا بشكل جيد.

3. The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.

– ساعدت مياه النيل الفلاحون المصريين فى زراعة الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات.

4. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods.

– فى هذه الفترة، اعتمدت زراعة الخضراوات على كمية المياه القادمة من فيضانات النيل.

5. People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.

– غالبًا ما استخدم الناس العسل مع الخبز والقشطة لصناعة الكيك.

6. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

– استخدموا أيضًا القليل من البلح والتين لعمل عصائر من الفاكهة.

7. Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

– عرف بعض العائلات كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لإضافة طعم أفضل لطعام الطهى.

8. They also knew how to preserve food.

– عرفوا أيضًا كيفية حفظ الطعام.

9. They dried fish or used salt to preserve it.

– جففوا الأسماك أو استخدموا الملح لحفظ الطعام.

10. They used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

– استخدموا البرطمانات لحفظ الفاكهة والخضراوات لفصل الشتاء.



1. Listen and read about food in Ancient Egypt. What did families use to make their cooking taste better?

- استمع واقرأ عن الطعام في مصر القديمة. ما الذي استخدمه العائلات لجعل الطعام مذاق أفضل؟


استمع إلى النص:

Paintings[1] from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care[2] of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended[3] on how much water came from the Nile floods[4]. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic[5], lentils, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably[6] ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs[7] to make sweet fruit drinks.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve[8] food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars[9] to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

Arabic Meaning

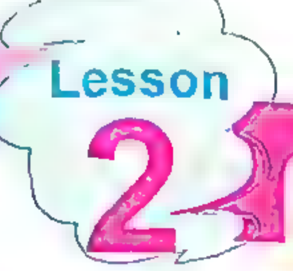
١. رسومات
٢. اعتنوا بـ
٣. اعتمدوا
٤. فيضانات النيل
٥. الثوم
٦. من المحتمل
٧. التين
٨. يخزن
٩. برطمانات

2. Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة في النص، وصلها بمعانيها:

1. a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things ..barley..
2. plants with a strong taste often used in cooking ....
3. a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food ....
4. add something to food to make it last for longer ....





Part: 2 Language focus

Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns	أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns	أسماء لا يمكن عدها

أولاً : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها Countable nouns (C)

- الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an / one أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an
- الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.



- كيف نكّون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التى تعد:

١- إما بإضافة s آخر الاسم: book → books

٢- أو بإضافة es آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:

bus	→	buses	beach	→	beaches
tomato	→	tomatoes	glass	→	glasses

٣- أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.



٤- أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلى: knife → knives

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هى:

mouse	→	mice	ox	→	oxen
man	→	men	woman	→	women
child	→	children	tooth	→	teeth
			goose	→	geese

Uncountable nouns (U) ثانيًا : الأسماء التي لا تعد

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money / homework / time / traffic / juice / meat / fish

1. How many & How much:

- **How many:**

◎ نستخدم (كم عدد ...؟ How many?) للسؤال عن الأسماء التي تُعد، مثل أوراق الشجر أو الليمون.

◎ يمكننا الرد على السؤال بـ (How many?) برقم (a/an/five/twenty) أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot).

Ex - How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

- We need five lemons. - We need a few lemons.

ملحوظة : دائما يأتي بعد How many اسم يُعد جمع كما في المثال السابق.

- **How much:**

◎ نستخدم (كم كمية ...؟ How much..?) للسؤال عن الأسماء التي لا تُعد، مثل الشاي أو السكر.

◎ لا يمكننا الرد على هذا السؤال إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها (some / a little / a lot).

Ex: How much oil do we need? - We need a little oil.

2. some / any:

- تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتي بعد some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

Ex: There are some girls from Luxor in my class.

- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أي) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال . ويأتي بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

Ex: There aren't any tigers in Egypt.

Ex: Are there any lemons?

3. A lot of / A few / A little:

- **A lot of**

◎ نستخدم a lot of بمعنى "كثيرا من" أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والاسماء التي لا تعد؟

Ex: There are a lot of students in my class. (اسم جمع)

Ex: I like eating a lot of chocolate. (اسم لا يُعد)

- **A few**

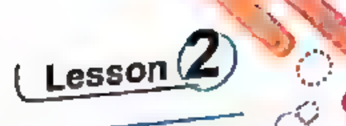
◎ نستخدم a few بمعنى "قليل من" أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط.

Ex: There are a few students in my class.

- **A little**

◎ نستخدم a little بمعنى "قليل من" أمام الأسماء التي لا تعد.

Ex: There is a little sugar in my tea.



4. There is & There are:

- There is / isn't يوجد / لا يوجد للمفرد

◎ نستخدم there is / isn't مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد.

Ex: There is a car in front of my house. (كلمة مفرد)

Ex: There is sugar in my tea. (كلمة لا تعد)

- There are / aren't يوجد / لا يوجد للجمع

◎ نستخدم there are / aren't مع الأسماء التي تعد (للجمع).

- There are lemons in the fridge.

1 Use the expressions in the box to complete the sentences from the text. Then read and check استخدم المصطلحات من النص لتكمل الجُمل

a few - a little - a lot of - some

1. The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow ____________ fruit and vegetables.
2. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate ____________ meat, usually at festivals.
3. They also ate ____________ eggs and cheese from cows or goats.
4. They also used ____________ dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

2 Look at the words in the list. Write C (countable) or U (uncountable)

انظر إلى الكلمات الموجودة في القائمة. اكتب C (يُعد) أو U (لا يُعد)

1. sugar ____U____	2. mango __________	3. traffic __________
4. store __________	5. oil __________	6. student __________
7. juice __________	8. money __________	9. ticket __________
10. homework ______	11. cow __________	12. honey __________

3 Complete the dialogs with How much or How many:

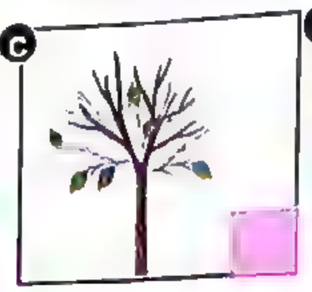
أكمل المحادثة بكم كمية؟ أو كم عدد؟

1. **Hani** : __How much_ milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?
   Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.
2. **Fareeda** : ____________ students are there in your English class, Dalia?
   Dalia : There are about forty, I think.
3. **Sherif** : ____________ math problems did you do yesterday?
   Karim : Just a few. They were difficult.
4. **Rana** : I'm going to the market now. ____________ tomatoes do we need?
   Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.
5. **Hana** : ____________ honey do we do we have, Ayman?
   Ayman : We have a lot. See the jar on the left.



4 Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with a lot of, a little or a few

انظر إلى الصور، أكمل الجمل بـ a lot of / a little / a few

a 
b 
c 
d 

1. There's ---a lot------ of traffic.
2. There's -------------- oil.
3. There are -------------- leaves.
4. There are -------------- fish.

5 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Please hurry. We don't have (a lot of) / a few time.
2. Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?
3. There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?
4. There are a few / a little lemons in the fridge, so we don't need any more.
5. How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?
6. How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?

6 Complete the first part of the recipe with expressions from the box:

أكمل الجزء الأول من وصفة الطعام بالتعبيرات من القائمة:

a few - a little - a lot of - an - half a cup

How to make chocolate chip cookies

(make 12 cookies)

Take ① -------------- of flour and add ② -------------- salt. Mix with 120 grams of butter and 150 grams of sugar. Add ③ -------------- egg and ④ -------------- drops of vanilla essence[1]. Cut 150 grams of dark chocolate[2] into ⑤ -------------- small pieces. Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture[3]. Then ...

Arabic Meaning

1. خلاصة الفانيليا
2. شيكولاتة غامقة
3. خليط





Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How .... lemons do we need for the lemonade?
   a often b much c many d money
2. I don't have .... money. I need some, please.
   a any b a few c some d a
3. I have .... brother and two sisters.
   a one b some c a few d many
4. There .... a lot of people in the club today.
   a was b are c is d have
5. Does Samia have .... cousins?
   a some b much c any d a little
6. There .... some sugar to make tea.
   a are b were c have d is
7. Our house has .... rooms.
   a a few b a little c any d much
8. The boy gave the poor man .... orange.
   a a b two c an d a few
9. Noha didn't buy .... dresses last year.
   a some b any c much d a lot
10. There is some .... in the basket.
    a flour b tomatoes c beans d cats
11. We have .... food. We don't need any more.
    a a little b a lot c many d a lot of
12. .... water should we drink a day?
    a How much b How often c How long d How many
13. .... there any milk in the bottle?
    a Are b Were c Is d Does
14. I ate .... apple and two bananas.
    a a b some c a lot d an
15. We have .... honey. Don't buy any.
    a a few b a lot of c a little d many
16. Let's go to the theme park. I have .... money.
    a many b a few c much d any

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



1. Herbs are plants
2. Ancient Egyptians
3. People used barley
4. How much



a. ate very well.
b. to make bread.
c. last for longer.
d. milk do you want?
e. with a strong taste often used in cooking.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. How .... (many) rice do you need?
2. I bought .... (a little) books yesterday.
3. Do you have .... (some) pens?
4. The streets are empty. There's .... (a few) traffic.
5. How .... (much) cups of coffee do you drink?
6. There .... (aren't) any sugar in the kitchen.
7. We don't have .... (some) juice in the glass.
8. There .... (isn't) some water in the fridge.
9. We can see .... (a few) oil in the bottle.
10. Does Noha have .... (a little) apples in the basket?

4 Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

herbs - lost - paintings - barley

We know many things about Ancient Egyptians from ❶ .... They used wheat and ❷ .... to make bread. They knew how to use ❸ .... to make food taste better. They also knew how to preserve food.



Part: 1 Reading





استمع إلى المفردات:

astonished	مندهش
caretaker	مقدم الرعاية
lean (leant / leaned)	يميل / يستند / يتكئ على
scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
throne	عرش
crown	تاج
dust	تراب



king	ملك
queen	ملكة
palace	قصر
royal children	الأطفال الملكيين
prince	أمير
princess	أميرة
paintings	لوحات
statue	تمثال
statue	تمثال
dining room	حجرة الطعام
curtains	ستائر
carpet	سجادة
furniture	أثاث
otherwise	وإلا



missing	مفقود
precious	ثمين / ذو قيمة
strange	غريب
colorful	كثير الألوان
empty	فارغ
dirty	متسخ

Adverbs الظروف



carefully	بعناية / بحرص
dangerously	بشكل خطير
finally	أخيرًا
quickly	بسرعة
simply	ببساطة
usually	عادةً

Help your child find the meaning of words in a text.

ساعد طفلك في أن يجد معاني الكلمات في نص.





Phrases & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

full of	ملىء بـ
wash ... off	يغسل ... من
at once	في الحال
have a bath	يستحم

Definitions تعريفات

caretaker (n)	القائم بالرعاية (اسم)	people who look after and clean a building....
leaning	مستند/متكئ على	moving the top part of the body in a particular direction
astonished	مندهش	very surprised
dust	تراب	dry dirt in the form of powder that covers surfaces

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
pick up	يلتقط	picked up
knock	يطرق/يدق	knocked
damage	يتلف	damaged
explain	يفسر / يشرح	explained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fall	يسقط	fell
hear	يسمع	heard
come	يأتي	come
lean	يستند على	leant / leaned

Study the following

1. Peter lives in a big palace.

– يعيش بيتر في قصر كبير.

2. The palace is old and no one lives there now.

– القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش فيه الآن.

3. The rooms are full of interesting and precious things.

– الغرف مليئة بالأشياء الثمينة والمثيرة للاهتمام.

4. Peter notices something strange about the big painting.

– لاحظ بيتر شيئًا غريبًا في اللوحة الكبيرة.

5. The king's place in the painting is empty.

– مكان الملك في اللوحة فارغ.

6. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting.

– يتفاجأ بيتر وينظر بعناية إلى اللوحة.

7. He can see a crown and a scepter, but not the king.

– يمكنه رؤية التاج والصولجان، لكن ليس الملك.

8. Peter knows he must find the missing king at once.

– عرف بيتر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك المفقود في الحال.

9. He hears singing and knocks on the door.

– سمع الغناء وطرق الباب.

10. I spend years sitting in that painting.

– قضيت سنوات طويلة جالس في هذه اللوحة.

11. In the future, please clean the paintings in the palace!

– من فضلك نظف اللوحات في القصر في المستقبل!

12. He runs back to the painting to pick up his scepter.

– جرى إلى اللوحة ليلتقط صولجانه.

1 **Listen and read. Why does the king leave his painting?**

استمع واقرأ. لماذا ترك الملك لوحته؟


استمع إلى النص:

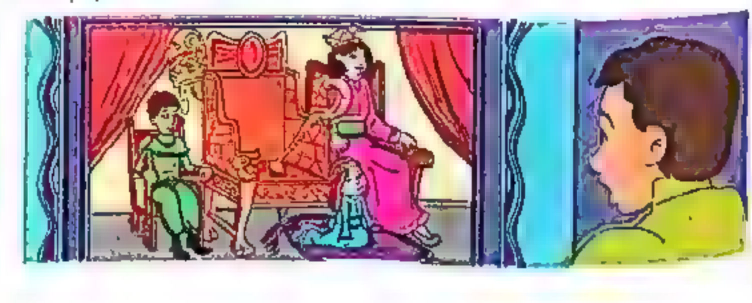




نص الاستماع

The Missing King

1. Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers[1]. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.
2. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown[2] on his head and a long scepter[3] in his hand. The queen and the royal children – the prince and the princess – are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!
3. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning[4] dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!
4. He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished[5]. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust[6] off me. Dust damages[7] the painting, so I simply had to have a bath[8]."
5. Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise[9], they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up[10] the scepter.
6. Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged – and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!



Arabic Meaning

١. مقدموا الرعاية
٢. تاج
٣. صولجان
٤. يميل/يتكئ على
٥. مندهش
٦. تراب
٧. يدمر
٨. حمام/دُش
٩. وإلا
١٠. يلتقط



2 Look at the words in bold in paragraph 2. Find and circle the objects in the picture:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بالخط الأسود العريض في الفقرة ٢. ابحث وضع دائرة على الأشياء التي في الصورة.

Tip!

You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a / an/ the) before the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

يمكنك استخدام الصور في قصة لمساعدتك في فهم الكلمات الجديدة. يمكنك أيضًا إلقاء نظرة على الكلمات الموجودة حول كلمة غير معروفة في النص لمساعدتك على فهمها. على سبيل المثال، هل هناك أداة (a / an/ the) قبل الكلمة، أو صفة؟ إذا كان هناك، فهو اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك إلقاء نظرة على الجمل قبل وبعد الاسم والتفكير في ما يمكن أن يعنيه الاسم في السياق.

3 Look at the other words in bold in paragraph 2. Are they nouns, verbs or adjectives? What do they mean?

انظر إلى الكلمات الأخرى المكتوبة بالخط الأسود العريض في الفقرة ٢. هل هي أسماء أم أفعال؟ ما المقصود بهذه الكلمات؟

	Type of word	Meaning
1. caretakers	noun	people who look after and clean a building
2. leaning		
3. astonished		
4. dust		

4 Listen and read again. Answer the questions. Write full sentences in your notebook.

استمع واقرأ النص مرة أخرى. أجب على الأسئلة. اكتب جملاً كاملة في كراستك.

1. Why does Peter live in a palace? ....
2. Who is usually in the painting? ....
3. Why is the princess in danger? ....
4. Where does Peter find the king? ....
5. Why does Peter start to clean all the paintings in the palace? ....
6. Why do you think it is important to look after old things? ....



Part: 2

CLIL: Social studies







Ancient Egyptian traditions



soap
صابون



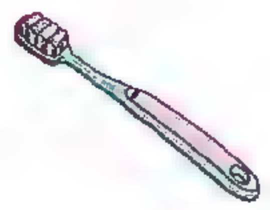
shampoo
شامبو



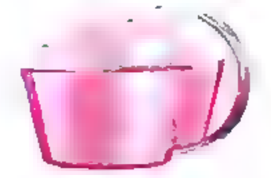
hairbrush
فرشاة شعر



toothpaste
معجون أسنان



toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان



cream
كريم



perfume
عطر



breath mints
معطر الفم بالنعناع

stick	عصا
incense	بخور
cardamom	الحبهان

cinnamon	نبات القرفة
powder	مسحوق

Help your child learn new words about personal care. ساعد طفلك في تعلم كلمات جديدة عن العناية الشخصية.



Adjectives صفات

popular	شائع
expensive	غالي الثمن
common	معروف / شائع
cheap	رخيص
ancient	قديم
fresh	منعش / طازج

Other Words

personal care	العناية الشخصية
herbs and spices	أعشاب وتوابل
recipe	وصفة
cone shape	شكل مخروطي
dried iris flowers	زهور السوسن المجففة
mint candies	حلوى النعناع
melon	الشمام
rosemary	إكليل الجبل (نوع من الأعشاب)
papyrus	ورق بردي
pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر
products	منتجات
rock salt	الملح الصخري
square candies	حلوى مربعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
rub	يدلك / يفرك	rubbed
cover	يغطي	covered

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wear	يرتدي	wore
leave	يترك / يغادر	left

Study the following

1. Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt.

   - العديد من المنتجات التي تستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية تم استخدامها لأول مرة في مصر القديمة.

2. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. - أحب قدماء المصريين العطور القوية.

3. The perfume was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients.

   - كان العطر باهظ الثمن لأنه يحتوي على الكثير من المكونات.

4. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals. - وكانت العطور الأرخص ثمناً تصنع من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض انواع المعادن.

5. They pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense.

   - قاموا بضغط المكونات الجافة في شكل مخروطي لصنع البخور.

6 To clean their teeth. Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.

- استخدم قدماء المصريين نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان لتنظيف أسنانهم.

7 They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth.

- وضعوا هذا المسحوق الجاف مباشرة على أسنانهم.

8 To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.

- صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع للحفاظ على أفواههم منتعشة طوال اليوم.

9 They heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.

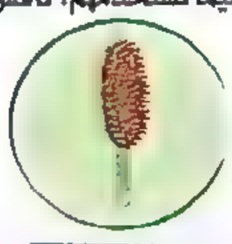
- قاموا بتسخين الخليط على النار، وتركوه ليبرد، وقطعوه إلى حلوى مربعة صغيرة.

1 Look at the things in the photos. What do we use them for? Discuss:

أنظر إلى الأشياء في الصور. فيما تستخدمهم؟ ناقش.


soap


shampoo


hairbrush


toothpaste


toothbrush


perfume


cream

2 Read the text. Which of the things from Exercise 1 are mentioned?

اقرأ النص. أي الأشياء من التمرين (١) مذكورة به؟

PERSONAL CARE(1) IN THE PAST

Many of the products(2) we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive(3) because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom(4) and cinnamon(5).

Arabic Meaning

١- العناية الشخصية
٢- منتجات
٣- غالٍ
٤- الحبهان
٥- نبات القرفة



Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals(6), then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape(7) to make incense(8). In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals(9)!

Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush(10) – a stick with small pieces of papyrus (11) tied (12) to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste(13) were a mint, rock salt(14), pepper, and dried iris flowers(15). They put this dry powder(16) directly (17) onto their teeth and rubbed (18) it with their toothbrushes.

Breath Mints

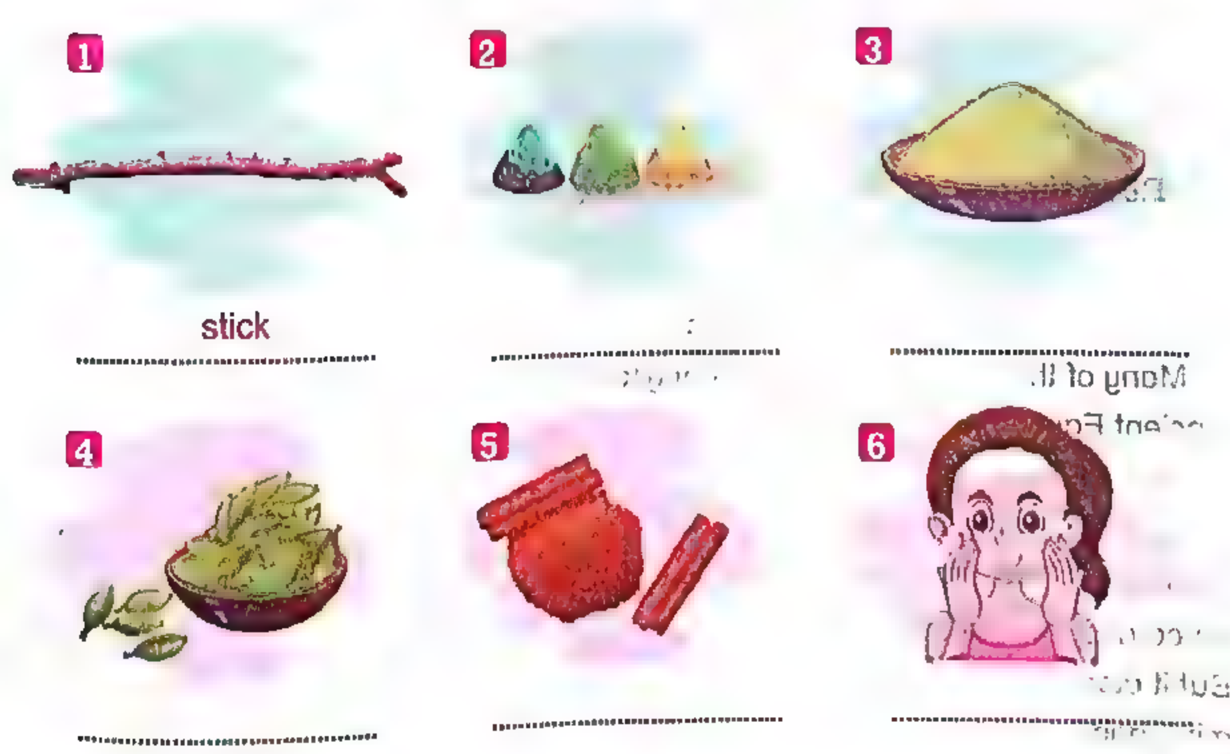
To keep their mouths fresh(19) all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies(20). They mixed cinnamon, melon(21), pine seeds(22), and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies(23).

Arabic Meaning

٦- معادن
٧- شكل مخروطي
٨- بخور
٩- مهرجانات
١٠- فرشاة أسنان
١١- ورق بردي
١٢- ربط
١٣- معجون أسنان
١٤- الملح الصخري
١٥- زهور السوسن المجففة
١٦- مسحوق
١٧- مباشرة
١٨- يدلك / يفرك
١٩- منتعش
٢٠- حلوى النعناع
٢١- شمام
٢٢- بذور الصنوبر
٢٣- حلوى مربعة

3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Write them under the photos

انظر إلى الكلمات بالخط العريض في النص. اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:



1 stick ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

4 **Put the words from the box in the correct columns in the table. Can you add any other words? Which are countable and uncountable?**

ضع الكلمات فى القائمة فى التصنيف الصحيح فى الجدول. هل يمكن إضافة كلمات أخرى؟ أى منها يعد أو لا يعد؟

cardamom - cinnamon - copper - lemon - melon - mint
orange - pepper - rosemary - salt

Fruit	Herbs	Spices	Minerals

5 **Read the sentences. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences:** اقرأ الجمل واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ). صحح الجمل الخاطئة:

1. Kapet was one expensive ingredient in Ancient Egyptian perfume. ______
- -
2. Cheaper perfumes had a lot of spices in them. ______
- -
3. Ancient Egyptians often put cream perfume on their heads. ______
- -
4. They used pine seeds to make toothbrushes. ______
- -
5. Their toothpaste had salt and pepper in it. ______
- -
6. The candies to keep their mouths fresh had nuts in them. ______
- -





1 Complete the dialogue with the following words:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

ingredients – Kapet – perfumes – What

Salma : What was the most popular perfume in ancient Egypt?

Mohamed : It was called ❶ --.

Salma : ❷ ------------------------------------ was Kapet made of?

Mohamed : It was made of a lot of ❸ ---------------- which were difficult to find.

Salma : What were cheaper ❹ ------------------------- made from?

Mohamed : Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Kings live in a -------------.
   - a garden
   - b palace
   - c school
   - d shop
2. I can't wash my hair. There is no -------------.
   - a incense
   - b toothpaste
   - c shampoo
   - d dust
3. A king wears a ------------- on his head.
   - a crown
   - b brown
   - c throne
   - d scepter
4. We use ------------- to wash our face.
   - a soup
   - b toothbrush
   - c soap
   - d perfume
5. The most popular ------------- in Ancient Egypt was called kapet.
   - a cream
   - b perfume
   - c toothpaste
   - d soap

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The Ancient Egyptians loved	a. was full
2 The king is sitting	b. Please, wash the dust off.
3 This place is dirty.	c. to clean their teeth.
4 They used a toothbrush	d. strong perfumes.
	e. on his throne.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is leaning - princess's - The scepter - head - over - the.

---

2. Egyptians - Ancient - candies - made - mint.

---

3. perfumes - from - Cheaper - flowers - were made.

---

4. are - things - Rooms - interesting - full of - and precious.

---

5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

perfumes - toothbrushes

---

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. personal care products were in Ancient egypt

---

2. where does peter find the king





Writing & Project



استمع الى المفردات،



salt dough	عجينة من الملح
recipe	وصفة
ingredients	مكونات
secret	سر

method	طريقة
preparation time	وقت التحضير
baking tray	صينية الخبز

Other words كلمات أخرى



plain flour	دقيق لجميع الأغراض
the oven	الفرن
low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
mixture	الخليط
flat surface	سطح مستو
shape	شكل
items	الأصناف
3D objects	أشياء ثلاثية الأبعاد

combination	مزيج/ توليفة
secret	سري/ سر
cloth	قماش
souks	الأسواق
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
besides	بالإضافة إلى
delicious dishes	أطباق لذيذة
tourists	سائحون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
heat	يسخن	heated
form	يشكل	formed
bake	يخبز	baked
work	يُشكل	worked
chop	يقطع	chopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
put	يضع	put
leave	يترك	left

Study the following

1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.

- سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.

2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. - اخلط الدقيق والملح فى إناء كبير.

3. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball. - اضف قليل من الماء ثم كمية أكثر وقلب الخليط حتى يبدأ فى تكوين كرة.

4. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want.

- ضع الكرة من العجينة على سطح مستوٍ وشكلها حسب ما تريد.

5. Put your finished items on a baking tray.

- ضع الأشياء التى انتهيت منها فى صينية الخبيز.

6. Leave the items to cool, then paint them. - اترك الأصناف لتبرد ثم لونها.

7. Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country.

- تشتهر مصر بتوابلها التي تستخدم في الطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلاد.

8. We can also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth.

- نستطيع استخدامها أيضًا في صنع العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش.

9. They also make great souvenirs and beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

- يعتبروا كهدايا تذكارية رائعة ويتم تغليفهم بطريقة جميلة للسياح الذين يزورون متاجر التوابل والأسواق.



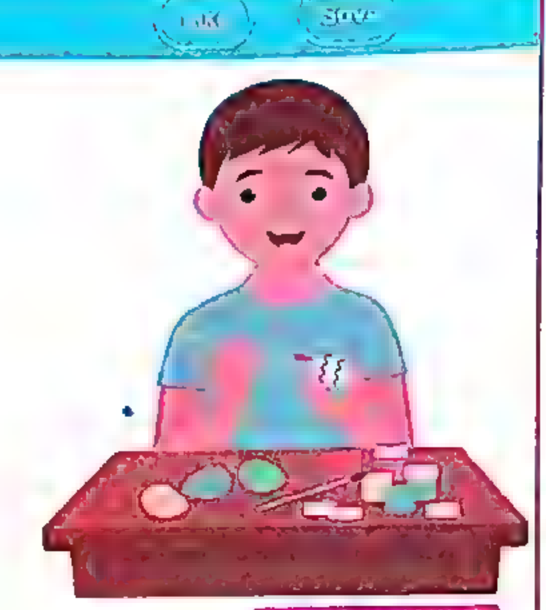
1 Read the recipe. Add the headings from the box:

اقرأ الوصفة وأضف العناوين فى القائمة إلى الوصفة:

Ingredients - Method - preparation time

Salt dough recipe[1]





1. Preparation time

   10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

2. Ingredients

   1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

   ½ a cup of salt (about 125g)

   ½ a cup of water (about 125ml)

3. Method

   1. Heat the oven on a low temperature[2].
   2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture[3] until it starts to form a ball.
   3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface[4] and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.
   4. Put your finished items on a **baking tray**[5] and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard[6].
   5. Leave the items[7] to cool, then paint them.

Arabic Meaning

١. وصفة عجينة الملح
٢. درجة حرارة
٣. الخليط
٤. سطح مستو
٥. صينية الخبز
٦. صلب
٧. الأصناف

2 Find these numbers in the text. Write the ingredients:

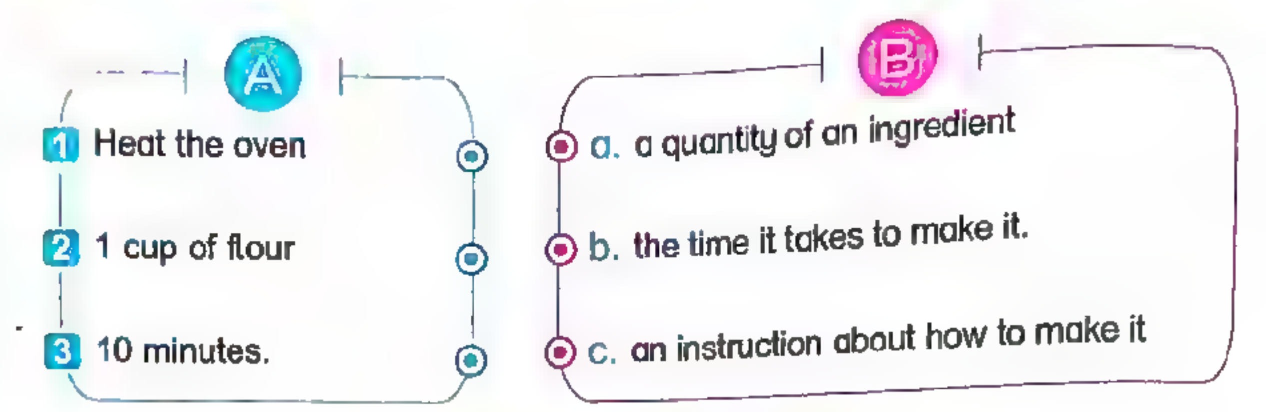
أوجد هذه الأرقام فى النص. اكتب المكونات:

1. 125 milliliters: $\frac{1}{2}$ a cup
2. 250 grams: ....
3. 125 grams: ....



3 Match the expressions to their functions in the recipe.

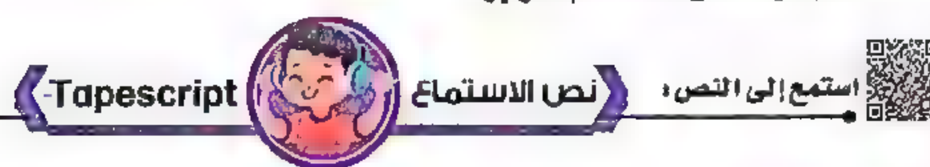
صل التعبيرات بوظيفتها في وصفة الطعام.





4 Read the text. What do we use spices for?

اقرأ النص في أي شيء نستخدم التوابل؟



Egyptian flavors[1]!

Egypt is famous for[2] its spices[3] that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations[4] of different spices are a secret[5] ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine[6], and to color cloth[7]. They also make great souvenirs[8], and beautifully packaged[9] for tourists visiting spice stores[10] and souks[11].

Arabic Meaning

١. النكهات المصرية
٢. شهير بـ
٣. بهارات / توابل
٤. توليفة
٥. سر
٦. الدواء
٧. قماش
٨. هدايا تذكارية
٩. تعبأ
١٠. المتاجر
١١. الأسواق



1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل



1. Making salt .... is a simple and fun activity for people of all ages.
2. You just need three ingredients: salt, flour, and ....
3. Salt dough can be .... into different forms.
4. After shaping your items, bake it in the oven at a .... temperature.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. a low – the – oven – Heat – temperature – on.

....

2. is – for – spices – Egypt – famous – its.

....

3. for – do – What – use – spices – we?

....

4. medicine – We can – to make – use them - perfume - and.

....

3 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Making salt dough

heat – baking tray

....

....

....

....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. many tourists love egyptian flavors

....

2. what things does hisham need to make soap

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



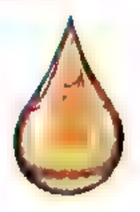
Review



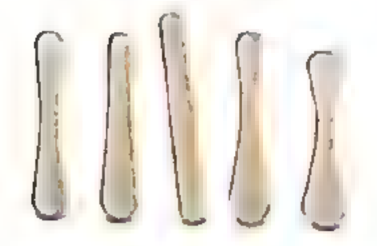
Key vocabulary


perfume oil
زيت عطري


wax
مادة الشمع


drop
قطرة


wick
فتيل (الشمعة)


popsicle sticks
عصي الآيس كريم

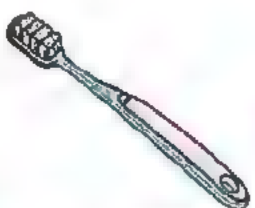

soap
صابون



shampoo
شامبو


hairbrush
فرشاة شعر


toothpaste
معجون أسنان


toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان


cream
كريم


perfume
عطر


breath mints
معطر الفم بالنعناع



Important verbs أفعال هامة


heat (ed)
يسخن


squeeze (d)
يعصر


press (ed)
يضغط


stir (red)
يقلب

Help your child revise Unit 6.
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.





candle	شمعة	personal care	العناية الشخصية
ingredients	مكونات	crown	تاج
royal children	الأطفال الملكيين	instructions	تعليمات
paintings	لوحات / رسومات	cinnamon	نبات القرفة
herbs and spices	أعشاب وتوابل	square candies	حلوى مربعة
incense	بخور	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
recipe	وصفة	scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
flavors	النكهات	throne	عرش
combination	مزيج / توليفة	caretaker	مقدم الرعاية
astonished	مندهش	curtains	ستائر

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
add	يضيف	added
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
knock	يطرق / يدق	knocked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
smell	يشم / يصدر رائحة	smelt / smelled
hold up	يمسك لأعلى	held up
read out	يقرأ بصوت عالٍ	read out
lean	يستند على / يميل	leant / leaned

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Countable & Uncountable nouns

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

Countable nouns أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns أسماء لا يمكن عدها

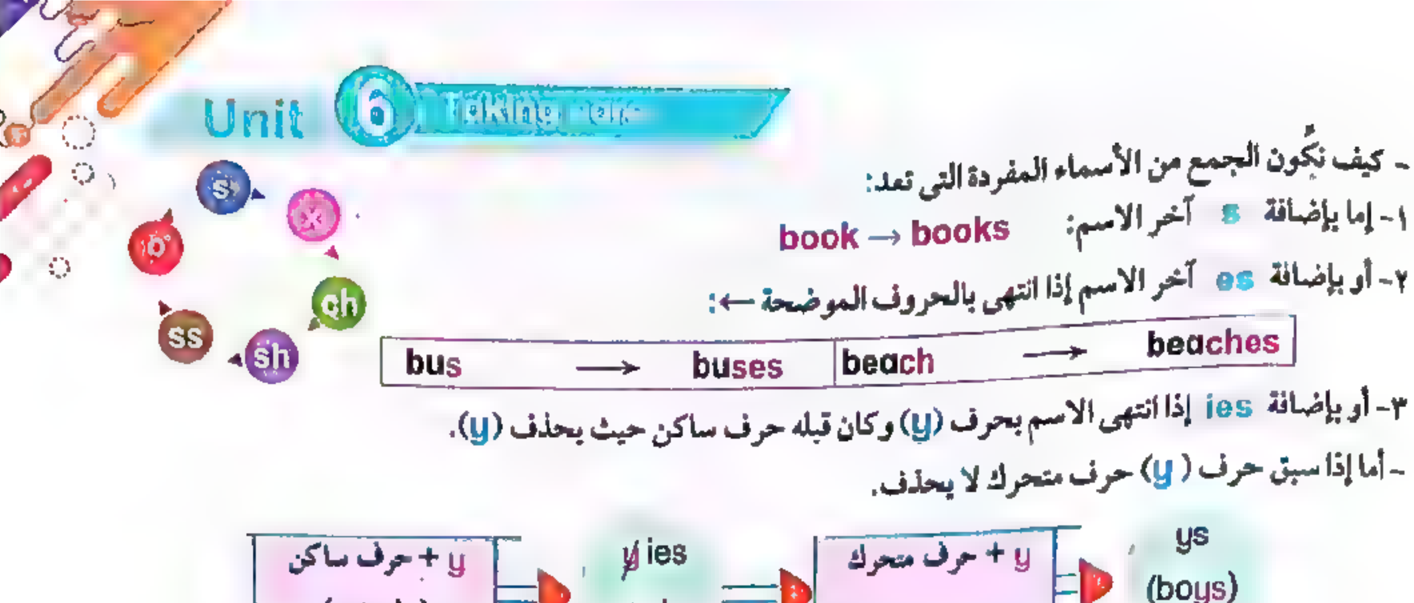
Countable nouns (C) أولاً : الأسماء التي يمكن عدها

– الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها a / an / one أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة a / an

– الأسماء التي تعد أما أن تنتهي بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.







- كيف نكّون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التي تعد:

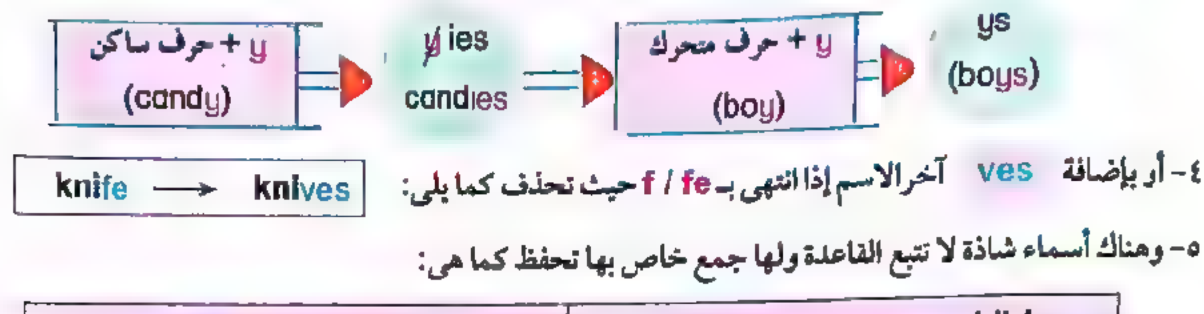
١- إما بإضافة s آخر الاسم: book → books

٢- أو بإضافة es آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:

bus → buses	beach → beaches

٣- أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.



٤- أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلي:

knife → knives

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

man → men	child → children

ثانيًا : الأسماء التي لا تعد Uncountable nouns (U)

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money / homework / time / traffic / juice

How many? كم العدد؟	How much? كم الكمية؟
- للسؤال عن الاسماء التي تعد: - How many oranges do you need? - I need two oranges. - I need a few oranges. - يمكن الرد على سؤال How many برقم أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot)	- للسؤال عن الاسماء التي لا تعد: - How much sugar do you have? - I have a little sugar. - لا يمكن الرد على سؤال How much إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها: (some / a little / a lot)
some بعض	**any أي**
- تأتي مع الجملة المثبتة وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد: - There are some boys in the park.	- تأتي مع الجملة المنفية والسؤال وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد: - There aren't any lemons. - Is there any milkshake?
A little قليل من	**A few قليل من**
- تأتي أمام الاسماء التي لا تعد فقط: - There is a little tea in the kitchen.	- تأتي أمام الاسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط: - There are a few people in the street.
A lot of كثير من	
- تأتي أمام الاسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والاسماء التي لا تعد: - There are a lot of books in my room. - I like eating a lot of honey.	



مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

Making candles at home

(1) We can make candles at home. First, we need some wax. We need some perfume oil. We need one glass and a wick for each candle. We need some popsicle sticks, too. We use them to hold the wicks up.

Lesson 3

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

(2) The Ancient Egyptians used products for personal care. They loved strong perfumes. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers. Others were made from herbs. They used toothbrushes to clean their teeth. They are different from ours today.

Lessons 4&5

Making salt dough

(3) Most children like making salt dough. They need water, flour and salt. They stir the mixture to form a ball. Then, they cut out the dough into shapes, numbers or letters. After that, they put the finished items on a baking tray in the oven for three hours until it is hard.

Al Azhar test

Herbs and spices

(4) Herbs and spices are important in our life. Salt and pepper are kinds of spices we use to cook food. We can drink herbs like mint and rosemary because they are healthy for our bodies. Herbs and spices were famous in Ancient Egypt, too. The Ancient Egyptians used them in making perfumes.

Activity - Unit 6

Egyptian spices

(5) Egypt is famous for its spices. The Egyptians use them in cooking. Restaurants use them, too. They don't only use spices to cook food. They also use them in perfume, medicine, and color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks.

Al-Azhar Test



الأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali lives in a big .... where his parents are the caretakers.
   a house   b farm   c palace
2. A lot of the rooms are .... and mysterious
   a closed   b clean   c opened

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

a little - much - do

A : Do you like coffee with milk?

B : Yes, I ....

A : How .... milk do you want in your coffee?

B : Just .... milk, thanks.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

In the sky, you can see the sun, stars, and the moon. The sun is up during the day. It is very hot. The sun gives us light and heat. Plants need the sun to grow. We can see the stars at night. They are bright! There are more stars than we can count. We can see the moon at night. Sometimes we can still see it during the day!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1. The sun is up during the ....
   a night   b summer   c day
2. You can't .... the stars.
   a see   b count   c look at
3. Plants need the ....
   a moon   b sun   c stars
4. The stars are .... at night.
   a dark   b bright   c black



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



5. The sun gives us heat and ....

a night b soil c light

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How .... lemons do we need for the lemonade?

a much b many c long

2. We need some perfume ....

a water b gas c oil

3. There isn't .... honey left in th jar.

a some b any c a lot

4. To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of ....

a toothbrush b hairbrush c shampoo

5. How .... juice did you drink?

a many b long c much

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. some - We - wax - need.

....

2. soup - need - much - do - we - How?

....

3. Ancient - candies - The - made - mint - Egyptians.

....

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Herbs and spices

....

....

....



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

		True	False
1	We use spices in cleaning houses.		
2	The spices give our food special flavors.		
3	Khan Al-Khalili is in Egypt.		
4	We can buy our spices in Khan Al-Khalili.		

2 Complete the dialogue with the following words:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

toothpaste – iris – papyrus – mint

Retag : How did the Ancient Egyptians clean their teeth?

Mariam : They used a stick with small pieces of ❶ -------------- at the end.

Retag : What was their ❷ ------------------------------ made of?

Mariam : Their toothpaste was made of mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried ❸ ----- flowers.

Retag : How did they keep their mouths fresh all day?

Mariam : They made ❹ ------------------------------------ candies.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can I have -------------- sugar, please?
   a a little b a lot c a few d many
2. -------------- are people who look after and clean buildings.
   a Princes b Archeologists c Caretakers d Explorers
3. How -------------- students are there in your class?
   a much b many c money d match

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

4. The king sits on his throne and holds his .... in his hand.

a palace b scepter c dust d steam

5. There isn't .... bread for breakfast.

a some b any c a few d many

6. .... the lemons to make lemonade.

a Knock b Melt c Squeeze d Heat

7. We need some .... to make candles.

a wool b wood c water d wax

8. How .... cooking oil do you want?

a many b much c tall d long

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة لما بين الأقواس:

1. How .... (much) apples do you eat?
2. There isn't .... (some) honey in the jar.
3. I have .... (many) money. I can buy the toy car.
4. Please add .... (a few) sugar in my tea.

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Can I have	a. to get a kilo of tomatoes.
2 How many lemons do we	b. on a low temperature.
3 I'm going to the market	c. need for the lemonade?
4 Heat the oven	d. cool the finished items?
	e. some sugar in my coffee?

6 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

In the past, people in Ancient Egypt used personal care products for their cleanliness. Now, we use some of these products. For example, perfumes, cream, toothpaste and breath mints. But these products are different now. <u>They</u> are modern. We buy our toothbrushes from the pharmacy now, but in the past the toothbrush was a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end.



A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about ....
   a) personal care products b) living in the past
   c) modern methods d) making items
2. Modern is the opposite of ....
   a) new b) old c) boring d) tiny

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....
4. Where can people buy personal products now? ....

7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. homework – How – did – much – you – do? ....
2. Egyptian – like – spices – Do – you? ....
3. bread – There – in – isn't – the – any – fridge. ....
4. on – of – the top – Press – the candle – the flowers. ....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Egyptian spices

Guiding questions

1- How do we use spices?
2- Where are spices sold?

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. we don t have any chocolate chip cookies ....
2. how much coffee do you want, rasha ....

General Revision on Units 4, 5 & 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٤ - ٥ - ٦

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

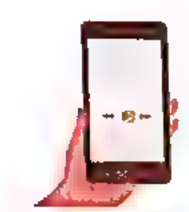
(Unit 4)


balloons
بالونات


streamers
أشرطة الزينة


birthday cake
تورتة عيد ميلاد


invitation
دعوة


playlist
قائمة تشغيل (أغانى)


fireworks
ألعاب نارية

(Unit 5)


ride a camel
يركب الجمل


travel by train
يسافر بالقطار


sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة


go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة


go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية

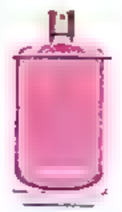

take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة



Revision 2



(Unit 6)

 perfume oil زيت عطري	 wax مادة الشمع	 drop قطرة	 wick فتيل (الشمعة)
 popsicle sticks عصي الآيس كريم	 soap صابون	 shampoo شامبو	 hairbrush فرشاة شعر
 toothpaste معجون أسنان	 toothbrush فرشاة أسنان	 cream كريم	 perfume عطر
 breath mints معطر الفم بالنعناع			

Important verbs الأفعال الهامة

heat (ed)
يسخن




squeeze (d)
يعصر



press (ed)
يضغط



stir (red)
يقلب





(Unit 4)

cycling	ركوب الدراجات	breath	النفس
celebration	احتفال	costume	ملابس / زى
traditions	تقاليد	guest	ضيف
blow out	يطفئ (الشمع)	adult	راشد / بالغ
Mother's Day	عيد الأم		



(Unit 5)

advanced	متقدم	inspiration	إلهام
sculptures	منحوتات	sway	يتأرجح
archaeologist	عالم آثار	wander	يتجول
caravan	قافلة	wasteland	الأرض القاحلة / البور
dromedaries	جمال(وحيدة السنام)	legend	قصة خرافية
fascinated	منبهر	port	ميناء
adventure	مغامرة	telescope	تليسكوب
exhausted	مرهق	felucca	قارب شراعي

(Unit 6)

candle	شمعة	crown	تاج
ingredients	مكونات	instructions	تعليمات
paintings	لوحات / رسومات	curtains	ستائر
herbs and spices	أعشاب وتوابل	cinnamon	نبات القرفة
recipe	وصفة	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
flavors	النكهات	mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
combination	مزيج/ توليفة	teapot	ابريق الشاي
astonished	مندهش	teaspoon	ملعقة شاى صغيرة
square candies	حلوى مربعة	tea leaves	أوراق نبات الشاى
caretaker	مقدم الرعاية	scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
incense	بخور	throne	عرش

Adjectives صفات

dangerous	خطير	magical	سحري
empty	فارغ	peaceful	هادئ
lost	تائه	relaxing	مريح
mysterious	غامض	huge	ضخم
awesome	مذهل	incredible	لا يصدق
difficult	صعب	lovely	جميل
warm	دافئ	traditional	تقليدى





Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

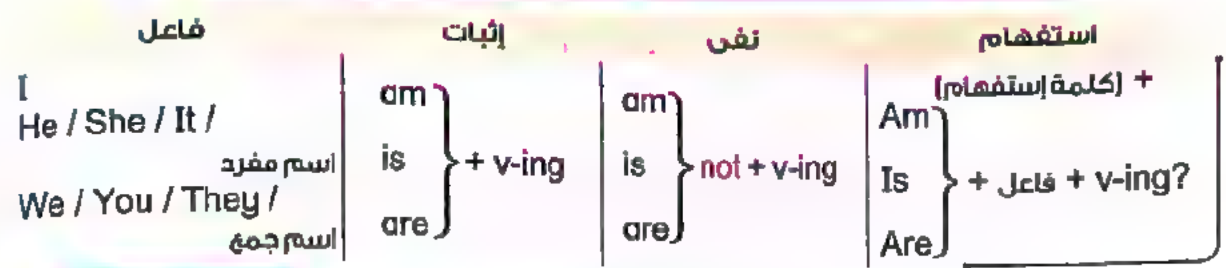
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
(Unit 4)					
decorate	يزين	decorated	hang up	يعلق	hung up
organize	ينظم	organized	blow up	يملىء بالهواء	blew up
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	let	يترك / يدع	let
attend	يحضر	attended	leave	يترك / يغادر	left
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed	burn	يحترق	burnt
dress up	يتهندم	dressed up			
figure out	يستنتج	figured out			
(Unit 5)					
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	fly	يطير	flew
sail	يبحر	sailed	ride	يركب	rode
call after	يسمي باسم	called after	say	يقول	said
move	يتحرك	moved	lose	يتوه / يضل	lost
roll	يلف / يتدحرج	rolled	know	يعرف	knew
last	يدوم	lasted			
(Unit 6)					
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	smell	يشم / يصدر رائحة	smelt / smelled
knock	طرق / دق	knocked	hold up	يمسك / لأعلى	held up
rub	يدلك / يفرك	rubbed	read out	يقرأ بصوت عال	read out
			lean	يستند على	leant / leaned





Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

1 The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر



فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد We / You / They / اسم جمع	am / is / are + v-ing	am / is / are not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) + Am / Is / Are + فاعل + v-ing?



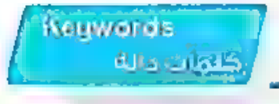
Keywords كلمات دالة **Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present**

Usage استخدام ١- يستخدم لوصف صورة. ٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Ex. 1. Noha and Laila are cleaning their room.
2. Adel is not talking on the phone.
3. What are Emad and Nabil doing?
4. Is Reem watching TV? - Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

2 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فاعل + فعل في التصريف الثاني	فاعل + didn't + inf.	(كلمة إستفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?



Keywords كلمات دالة **yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015**

Usage استخدام يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى وقت محدد فى الماضى

Ex. 1. She cooked fish yesterday.
2. She didn't cook meat yesterday.
3. Did she cook rice yesterday?
- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

3 Countable & Uncountable nouns

A Countable nouns (C) أولاً : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها

- الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an / one أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an
- الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بـ s / es / ies / ves أو تجمع جمع شاذ مثل:

man → men	child → children

B Uncountable nouns (U) ثانيًا : الأسماء التي لا تعد

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money / homework / time / traffic / juice

How much? كم للكمية...؟	How many? كم للعدد...؟
- للسؤال عن الاسماء التي لا تعد: - How much sugar do you have? - I have a little sugar. - لا يمكن الرد على سؤال How much: إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها: (some / a little / a lot)	- للسؤال عن الاسماء التي تعد: - How many oranges do you need? - I need two oranges. - I need a few oranges. - يمكن الرد على سؤال How many: برقم أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot)
any أي	**some** بعض
- تأتى مع الجملة المنفية والسؤال وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد: - There aren't any lemons. - Is there any milkshake?	- تأتى مع الجملة المثبتة وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لايعد: - There are some boys in the park.
A few قليل من	**A little** قليل من
- تأتى أمام الاسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط: - There are a few people in the street.	- تأتى أمام الاسماء التي لا تعد فقط: - There is a little tea in the kitchen.

A lot of كثير من

- تأتى أمام الاسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والاسماء التي لا تعد:
- There are a lot of books in my room.
- I like eating a lot of honey.



General Activity - Units (4 - 5- 6)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

	True	False
1 Sama likes music.		
2 Today is her sister's birthday.		
3 She's going to make a new playlist.		
4 They don't love to listen to music.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

1. Marco Polo was an Italian ....
2. He was one of the first people to visit ....
3. He went there in the 13^{th} ....
4. He wrote a .... about his experiences.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers usually have many farming ....
   a stones b tools c nuts d sculptures
2. How ....candles will you have on your birthday cake this year?
   a many b often c much d long
3. We let off ....on my birthday. It was amazing.
   a invitations b streamers c balloons d fireworks
4. Basma .... her mom in the kitchen now.
   a helps b help c is helping d helping
5. Each candle has one..................... .
   a button b wick c hand d drop

Revision 2

6. I......... a famous actor yesterday.

a met　b am meeting　c meet　d will meet

7. A king always sits on a ....

a scepter　b desk　c castle　d throne

8. There aren't ....dinosaurs in the world now.

a some　b much　c any　d lot

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The king has a scepter	a. on his head.
2 I blow out the candles	b. a very old and famous story
3 Legend	c. did you drink?
4 How much milk	d. in his hand.
	e. with one breath.

5 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ihab. I like sailing across the Nile. My friends and I usually go on a felucca across the Nile. We don't sail the felucca by ourselves. It's not easy to sail. There is always someone to sail it for us. The felucca has a big white sail which moves slowly in the wind. It's very enjoyable. The trip is always amazing. We enjoy the sunny weather. The best place to go on a felucca is in Aswan.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1- They usually sail across the Nile in......weather.

a messy　b sunny　c rainy　d cloudy

2- The felucca sail moves ....in the wind.

a carelessly　b strongly　c quickly　d slowly

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What does Ihab like to do?

....

4- What's the best place to go on a felucca?

....



6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. little - is - Wick - a cotton rope - the candle - inside.

----

2. the - Are - invitations - you - email - sending?

----

3. perfumes - Egyptians - loved - Ancient - strong - the.

----

4. went - month - vacation - My family - last - on.

----

7 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

perfume - toothpaste

----

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- it isn t cold today

2- how many brothers and sisters do you have, muna

General Activities

Activity 1

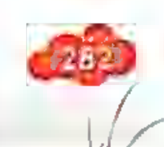
1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):
استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 The garden is dirty and dry.		
2 They bought all kinds of trees.		
3 The cousins helped Ali in the garden.		
4 The garden became a good one.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. There .... a few flowers in the garden.
   a) am   b) is   c) are   d) have
2. My father is a farmer. He grows .... on his farm.
   a) vegetables   b) balloons   c) games   d) chemicals
3. A: How .... brothers do you have ?   B: I have three.
   a) much   b) many   c) often   d) long
4. Cats have sharp .... and teeth.
   a) fur   b) trunks   c) leaves   d) claws
5. I can .... photos with my camera.
   a) talk   b) play   c) take   d) eat
6. We don't use .... in organic food.
   a) soil   b) chemicals   c) water   d) light



7. I never go to school .... Fridays.

a at   b in   c on   d by

8. My friend Amr is the boy .... plays football well.

a who   b which   c when   d where

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Kind people are nice	a. make honey.
2 The weather is usually	b. taking photos.
3 Bees are insects which	c. to others and helpful.
4 I like cats,	d. they are my best pets.
	e. sunny in Egypt in summer.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Waleed. I'm a student. On my first day at school last year, I woke up early and wore my new uniform. I went to school with my parents. The school was big with a green playground. It had two buildings, each building had four floors. I went to my classroom with our class teacher. It was a nice room with some desks and a blackboard. I sat on the third desk next to another student. Our teacher was very friendly.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Waleed went to school with his ....

a sisters   b parents   c brothers   d cousins

2. The school playground was ....

a small   b long   c big   d wide

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did Waleed wear for the first day at school?

....

4. Where did Waleed sit in the classroom?

....





5 Read and complete:

إقرأ وأكمل:

wind - terrible - sky - moon

Yesterday, I was traveling on a ship. The weather became very ❶............ . There was a strong ❷................ After some time, the ❸.............. became a bit clearer. I enjoyed my time on the ship.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. loves - food - the - Samar - local. ....
2. is - much - Alexandria - at - quieter - night. ....
3. the dentist - you - go - do - How often - to? ....
4. my - went - I - to - with - Hurghada - family. ....

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

A birthday party

balloons - decorate

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we don t like fish at all ....
2. where do Nadine s grandparents live ....

Activity 2

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Basel is a / an ....
2. He's good at ....
3. All students and .... like him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. He is very .... He shows respect to everyone.

   a lazy   b sad   c funny   d polite

2. Can I have .... sugar in my coffee?

   a a few   b lots   c a lot   d a little

3. My uncle uses natural .... , so his vegetables are always delicious.

   a fertilizer   b communities   c roofs   d apartment

4. This is the house .... my uncle lives.

   a when   b which   c who   d where

5. On my birthday, I .... up some balloons.

   a eat   b cut   c plant   d blow

6. I always have my breakfast .... eight o'clock in the morning.

   a in   b on   c at   d for

7. They used .... to make their sculptures.

   a flour   b clay   c milk   d soap

8. We don't eat meat at all. We .... eat it.

   a never   b always   c often   d sometimes

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 If we go by bus,	a. the library on Tuesday.
2 Let's go to	b. people are coming to the party?
3 How many	c. modern or well developed.
4 Advanced	d. it is quicker.
	e. on foot.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday I made chocolate chip cookies with my mother. We'll serve them on my sister's birthday tomorrow. My father bought the ingredients from the supermarket.



General Activities

We made fifty cookies. My mother wrote the recipe. We put two cups of flour and a little salt. Then, we mixed 250 grams of butter and a cup of sugar. We added two eggs and a few drops of vanilla essence. After that, we cut 200 grams of dark chocolate into small pieces. We stirred the mixture. We cut the mixture into small circles and put it into the baking tray on a high temperature for forty five minutes.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. We made .... for my sister's birthday.

ⓐ cakes ⓑ cookies ⓒ pizza ⓓ candles

2. The underlined pronuoun "it" refers to ....

ⓐ mixture ⓑ salt ⓒ tray ⓓ recipe

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Who bought the ingredients from the supermarket?

----

4. How many eggs did we put in the cookies?

----

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة:

1. How often does she ____________(went) to see her grandparents?
2. There are ____________(any) cars in the garage.
3. They aren't ____________(enjoy) their vacation.
4. He is ____________(interest) in Ancient Egypt.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. school - proud - are - We - our - of. ------------------------------
2. exciting - football - Is - game - an? ------------------------------
3. go - We - to - the - want - beach - to. ------------------------------
4. don't water - Plants - if - die - you - them. ------------------------------

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. yes that's true ------------------------------
2. who is fatima ------------------------------



8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

personal care

perfume - toothbrush

Activity 3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My grandmother's birthday is tomorrow.		
2 My sister is making a big cake.		
3 My father is sending invitations online.		
4 My sister is blowing up the balloons.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The .... is the top of a house.
   a room b roof c food d mood
2. How .... oil do we need?
   a many b a lot c a few d much
3. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila .... one day.
   a dome b minaret c souk d museum
4. We didn't .... a vacation this year.
   a has b had c have d having
5. She is .... She isn't tidy or organized.
   a messy b calm c shy d polite

6. I was .... last night. I finished my homework late.

a tired b tiring c exciting d excited

7. My brother was born .... August 17th.

a at b in c on d of

8. These are the pens .... I use at school.

a when b which c who d why

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1. What are	a. visit the museum?
2. A felucca is	b. students are in your class?
3. Why don't we	c. never eat it.
4. How many	d. a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
	e. you reading?

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Osama. I love summer vacation for two reasons. The first reason is that I like summer fruit like grapes, mangoes and figs. The second reason is that we have vacation for two months. Last vacation, I went to my grandparents' house for about a month. **They** live in a small village near Fayoum. I went there with my parents. Their house has lots of trees. There are mango trees and guava trees. We eat fresh fruit. Every evening, my grandfather takes us for a walk.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Osama likes the ----------------.

a winter b spring c summer d fall

2. The underlined word "**They**" refers to the ----------------.

a parents b grandparents c friends d cousins

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where do Osama's grandparents live?

----

4. How long did they stay in the grandparents' house?





5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

healthy - breaks - eat - write

My teacher gives me some study tips. I always have regular ❶ .... I ❷ .... down a list of what I want to do each time in my study. I always have a ❸ .... meal at lunchtime. I can't study if I am hungry.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. vacation - excited - I'm - about - our.

....

2. do - on - you - school - get up - When - days?

....

3. to - the - Let's - on - Tuesday - library - go.

....

4. visit - my cousins - We - Aswan - in.

....

7 Write a blog of FIFTY (50) words about your visit to Sharm El-Sheikh using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مدونة من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Your name is Sara.

Guiding questions

1- Where's Sharm El-Sheikh?

2- What did you see there?

Sara — BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

7th January

....

....

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي

1. hi! youssef, what are you doing . ...

2. i went to hurghada last summer ....



1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Mona plays basketball .... a day.
2. Mona has a .... lesson.
3. Mona goes to the .... to fly her kite.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... she find her book yesterday?

   a Did b Does c Do d Is

2. I went to the theme park and rode on the ....

   a plane b rollercoaster c truck d camel

3. Hani is .... to the beach tomorrow.

   a went b goes c going d go

4. When the tomatoes become red, my father .... them.

   a play b harvest c plant d read

5. I write my daily routine in a ....

   a dairy b pen c leaf d diary

6. My dad let off the .... on my birthday.

   a fireworks b balloons c playlist d invitations

7. How .... students are there in your class?

   a many b much c high d little

8. .... summer, I go to the beach.

   a On b In c Of d With



3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Ancient Egypt was	a. students study science.
2 Ahmed is very friendly.	b. an amazing vacation.
3 This is the place where	c. don't agree.
4 It was	d. famous for perfumes.
	e. He always helps people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, we went on a picnic. We took some delicious food and juice with us. We played chess and cards. In the evening, we went to a temple. My father told us that it was a very old temple. The temple was on a small hill and we enjoyed climbing there. It was really a cool and comfortable place. There was also a small river just near the temple. We went on a boat there. Then, we had our lunch and returned home in the evening. I really had a great time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The temple was very ....

   a old b happy c small d tall

2. They took some .... and juice with them.

   a pens b books c food d paper

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where was the temple?

....

4. When did they return home?

....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة:

1. I always .... (has) breakfast before I go to school.
2. How .... (much) pens do you have?
3. Are you .... (play) tennis now?
4. I .... (take) photos yesterday.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. traveling - Are - London - to - you - tomorrow? ---------------------
2. practicing - the - football - for - I'm - game. ---------------------
3. nervous - feel - and - I - shy - a bit. ---------------------
4. you - Can - the scissors - pass - , please - me?- ---------------------

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Riding a felucca on the Nile

sailing boat - nice

----

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. she s studying for her exams this week ---------------------
2. what are you doing now malak? ---------------------

Activity 5

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I made a salt dough at music class.		
2 The supermarket is near our school.		
3 We took the mixture home.		
4 We put the salt dough on a high temperature.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Nader and Walid .... my friends last year.
   a were b was c is d am

2. Dalia is .... She is intelligent and good at school work.

a shy　　b messy　　c clever　　d nervous

3. I went .... biking in the desert yesterday.

a loud　　b quad　　c mood　　d dive

4. We invited many .... to my birthday party.

a guests　　b candles　　c balloons　　d cakes

5. We need some .... to make candles.

a soap　　b wax　　c metal　　d drops

6. We need .... lemons for the recipe.

a a lot　　b little　　c a little　　d a few

7. My friend ate some cake .... my birthday.

a in　　b to　　c on　　d for

8. I don't go to school on Friday. I .... go to school on Friday.

a never　　b sometimes　　c usually　　d always

3 Read and match (A) with (B):　　اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Mr Samir is the teacher	a. but I don't like mangoes.
2 Sculptures are	b. some photos.
3 I like most types of fruit,	c. who runs the football club.
4 Can I borrow your	d. phone, please?
	e. art made from stone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:　　اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hens live on a farm. They live in a special house. This house is made of wood or mud. Hens make nests from straw. The nests are small, strong, and warm. The nests keep their eggs safe. Each hen lays one egg every morning. The eggs can be white or brown. Each day, the farmer picks up the eggs. He puts the eggs into a basket. He sells them at the market. Fresh eggs are delicious. We all like eggs. They are very useful for our health.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The nests are made of ....

a metal　　b straw　　c paper　　d cloth

2. The eggs can be white and ....

a blue　　b green　　c black　　d brown

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do hens make nests?

----

4. Where can the farmer sell the eggs?

----

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

keep - claws - calm - soft

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with ❶ ---------------- fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and ❷ ---------------- animals. They are usually friendly. It is true that cats have sharp ❸ ---------------- and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. to - He - went - a year - China - ago. ----------------------------------
2. you - did - your - Where - books - find? ----------------------------------
3. our friends - invite - usually - We - parties - in. ----------------------------------
4. to - last - the library - went - She - week. ----------------------------------

7 Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

To your friend Hoda telling her about your last birthday party. Your name is Nada and your email address is nada@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hoda@yahoo.com

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. can I ask you a question please --
2. i went to alexandria with my family ---------------------------------------

Activity 6

1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Dalia, Mona and Noha are ....
2. They're decorating the birthday ....
3. Noha is sending the email ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. What .... Amr's plans for this week?
   a are b is c am d was
2. I need .... to clean my teeth.
   a toothache b shampoo c perfume d toothpaste
3. Hani usually .... to school by bus.
   a go b goes c going d don't go
4. It's helpful to .... down a list of what you want to do.
   a write b remember c check d work
5. A: Were you at school yesterday? B: Yes. I ....
   a were b is c am d was
6. A/An .... studies old objects that they find under the ground.
   a engineer b vet c archaeologist d farmer
7. I didn't give my friend .... books, he has enough books.
   a some b much c any d a lot
8. My neighbor is very .... He is worried about talking to people.
   a friendly b nervous c shy d bad

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

(A)	(B)
1 I'm hanging up	a. for my exams.
2 I'm studying hard	b. the rollercoaster at the theme park?
3 How was	c. in the living room.
4 Do you like riding on	d. the streamers for my sister.
	e. your trip?

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Khaled . My birthday is the most special day in my life. I love my birthday when my parents give me gifts on that day. This year I got a bicycle for my birthday, and it is the best gift in my life ! My birthday celebration starts early. I wake up early and get ready for school. I wear special clothes for my birthday. My classmates sing 'happy birthday' for me and I give chocolate to everyone. The real party starts at home in the evening, and all my best friends come.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. This year Khaled got a .... for his birthday.

   a book   b bicycle   c pen   d car

2. Khaled gives .... to his classmates.

   a clothes   b money   c bikes   d chocolate

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Khaled celebrate his birthday? ....
4. Who comes to the birthday? ....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة:

1. If you heat ice, it .... (melt).
2. My mom always .... (make) basbousa.
3. This is the song .... (who) I like most.
4. How .... (much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. have - a lot of - candles - We.

....

2. there - any - lemons - Are ?

....

3. many - How - do - brothers - have - you?

....

4. honey - Can - , please - have - I - some?

....



7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Egyptian flavors

spices - cooking

----

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. ahmed and samir are good friends -----------------------------------

2. how was your trip, karim -----------------------------------

Activity 7

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Ali is having an exam tomorrow.		
2 He's studying hard.		
3 He always worries about exams.		
4 It's good to relax.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The school .... I go is near my house.

a where b who c when d which

2. Hani has a.......................... in his foot.

a pan b pen c pain d pool



3. A: How often ....you drink tea a day? B: Twice a day.

a does b do c are d have

4. Dalia is making a / an .... of her favorite songs for her birthday tonight.

a playlist b armchair c toothbrush d firework

5. Listen! The baby .... on the second floor.

a cry b cries c is crying d cried

6. My friend is very .... He is worried and isn't calm.

a polite b nervous c happy d glad

7. "Tidy" is the opposite of " .... ".

a mess b miss c missing d messy

8. Does your friend offer you a drink when you .... him?

a visits b visited c visiting d visit

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Did Dalida	a. famous for its spices.
2 The ship didn't leave	b. your birthday?
3 Egypt is	c. the port.
4 How do you celebrate	d. find her book?
	e. to make toothbrushes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Sharm El-Sheikh is a beautiful town in Egypt. It is in the east of Egypt. It has a nice weather. Tourists from all over the world visit it every year. Sharm El-Sheikh has a lot of things to do. Tourists can go diving in the Red Sea. They can go shopping at department stores. Tourists stay in hotels. Sharm El-Sheikh is a green town. It has a lot of trees. We should keep this town clean. Tourists say it's



one of the most important towns to spend the winter holiday in. Sharm El-Sheikh has warm weather in winter. People in Sharm El-Sheikh are friendly. It's an important town for tourism.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is in the .... of Egypt.

   a west   b east   c north   d south

2. The underlined word it refers to ....

   a Luxor   b Aswan   c Sharm El-Sheikh   d Cairo

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can tourists stay in Sharm El-Sheikh?

....

4. What do tourists say about Sharm El-Sheikh?

....

5 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

buildings - computer - playground - library

My school is very big. It has two ❶.......... . I play football in the ❷.......... . Students can play basketball and tennis, too. I go to the IT building to use the ❸.......... . Mr Ahmed is a teacher who always helps us. I like him very much.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة.

1. the cake - isn't - now - Mom - making. ....

2. apartment - city - center - is - Our - in - the. ....

3. homework - does - give - How often - your - you - teacher? ....

4. stay - did - in - long - the desert - How - they? ....





7 Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Sameh about Marco Polo, your name is Ali and your email address is ali@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is sameh@gmail.com

explorer - desert

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i went on a felucca on the nile

----

2. is she living in new york?



Activity 8



استمع واكمل:



1. Aunt Samira is a .... woman.
2. Aunt Samira likes all ....
3. She has a ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can you pass me .... salt, please?

   a many b a lot c a few d a little

2. Omar is a good boy. He's really ....

   a messy b organized c noisy d careless

3. I know the man .... took your mobile.

   a who b when c which d where

4. I need an adult to .... the fireworks on my birthday.

   a blow out b take off c let off d put on

5. .... you get a prize last year?

   a Do b Did c Doing d Does

6. There are a lot of .... to help in the project.

   a volunteers b perfumes c chemicals d monuments

7. What are Noha and Dalia .... ?

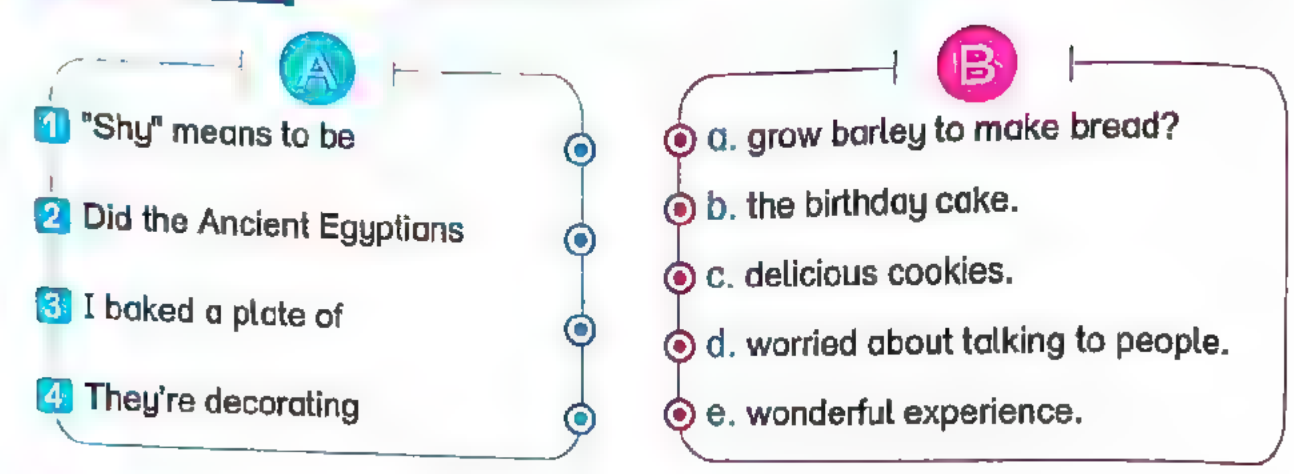
   a do b does c doing d did

8. A .... is a traditional Egyptian sail boat.

   a flute b wood c felucca d stick

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A

1. "Shy" means to be
2. Did the Ancient Egyptians
3. I baked a plate of
4. They're decorating

B

a. grow barley to make bread?
b. the birthday cake.
c. delicious cookies.
d. worried about talking to people.
e. wonderful experience.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is a country in North Africa. Most of Egypt is desert. Egypt has the longest river in the world, the Nile. Many tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. They come to enjoy the sunny weather. They go to Luxor and Aswan to see the great monuments. They can also visit the Pyramids and Sphinx in Giza. They can take a lot of photos of the Pyramids. Hurghada is a famous town for tourists. They can do many activities there. They can swim and go diving in the sea. They can relax on the beach.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Egypt is a country in ---------------- Africa.

   a North b South c East d West

2. Egypt has the longest ---------------- in the world.

   a desert b river c sea d camel

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What can tourists do in Hurghada?

   ----

4. Why do tourists go to Aswan and Luxor?



5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة:

1. I have ------------- (a little) T-shirts. I need to buy more.
2. If you ------------- (pressed) this button, the machine starts.
3. The person ------------- (which) is standing there is my uncle.
4. A: How ------------- (old) do you watch TV? B: Three times.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. math - How many - did - problems - do - you?

----

2. favorite - Football - game - my - is.

----

3. go - We - to - the - want - beach - to.

----

4. are - New York - many - There - parks - in.

----

7 Write paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Book Day party

dress up - prize

----

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. they re playing with the balloons

----

2. why isn t Salma at the party

Activity 9

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

(نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

	True	False
1. It's amazing to live in green cities.		
2. The weather is nice and cool in green cities.		
3. People want to live in cold weather.		
4. In green cities there are many gardens.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I sent a/an .... to my friend for my birthday.
   a) book b) invitation c) diary d) voyage
2. Bees are insects .... make honey.
   a) where b) when c) who d) which
3. Can you give me the .... of your recipe?
   a) ingredients b) games c) seeds d) perfumes
4. I often get up late.................... Fridays.
   a) for b) at c) on d) in
5. The film we saw yesterday was ....
   a) nervous b) shy c) exciting d) worried
6. A: How .... do you visit your grandparents? A: Twice a week.
   a) many b) much c) old d) often
7. My uncle keeps .... geese on his farm.
   a) a lot of b) a little c) much d) any
8. We .... my sister's birthday party last week.
   a) pressed b) celebrated c) took d) sailed



3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 He visited his grandma	a. to harvest seeds in the ground.
2 Hala is messy.	b. do at Sham El-Nessim?
3 Early spring is the best season	c. She has lots of books on the floor.
4 What do you usually	d. in Ismailia last summer.
	e. appears in the garden wall.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I went to the library yesterday to read a book about life in Ancient Egypt. I found out that their life wasn't different from our life today. They grew fruit and vegetables. They grew wheat and barley to make bread, too. They kept animals at home to get milk, eggs, meat and cream. They also used herbs and spices to make their food taste better. They dried fish and used salt to **preserve** some of their food.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Life in Ancient Egypt was .... our life today.

   a different from   b like   c worse than   d happier than

2. The word "**preserve**" means to make food last for ....

   a shorter   b longer   c bigger   d smaller

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the Ancient Egyptians keep animals?

   ....

4. What did they grow to make bread?

   ....



5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة:

1. Did you .... (wore) your favorite dress in the party?

2. Mr Walid .... (always) comes late to work. He likes to be on time.

3. How .... (many) do you work in the community garden? Three times a week.

4. I like most types of fruit .... (so) I don't like mangoes.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. in - Dalia - science - interested - is.

....

2. was - your - trip - Where - last?

....

3. first - in - It's - Aswan - my - time.

....

4. things - with - How - , Adel - are - you?

....

7 Write paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Study tips

Guiding questions

1- Should I take a break?

2- What should I eat?

....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. hoda and salwa wore party hats

---

2. how long did you stay in china

Al-Azhar Activity 10

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are my favorite animals.

   a Cats   b Lions   c Monkeys

2. Cats are beautiful with soft .... which is nice to touch.

   a hair   b fur   c hand

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

did - fireworks - carnival

A : Where did you go yesterday?

B : I went to the ....

A : What .... you see there?

B : There were a lot of ....

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Ghada is going on vacation. She's traveling to Sharm El-Sheikh by plane. She's packing her suitcase. She's going to take her swimming suit and T-shirts. She likes diving in the Red Sea and going quad biking in the desert. She will visit St. Catherine's Monastery, too. Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing town.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ghada is traveling by ....
   a bus b plane c train
2. Ghada is going to .... her clothes.
   a pack b wash c buy
3. Ghada likes .... in the Red Sea.
   a exploring b diving c relaxing
4. Ghada is going quad biking in the ....
   a monastery b dome c desert
5. Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing ....
   a town b country c village

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The weather is usually hot in Egypt in ....
   a winter b summer c fall
2. I usually get up .... 6 o'clock.
   a in b on c at
3. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the ....
   a market b school c hospital



4. If we book the tour today, it .... cheaper.

a was b is c are

5. Dalia is the girl .... sits next to me in the English class.

a where b who c which

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. go - you - Do - to - parties?

....

2. tickets - we - Yesterday - online - booked.

....

3. candles - Children - to - blow out - like - with - breath - one.

....

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Your visit to the Bab Zuweila Minaret

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Al-Azhar Activity 11

A- Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can go on a .... on the river.

a boat   b felucca   c ship

2. I can see the amazing views around the ....

a lake   b river   c sea

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

afraid - climb - Why

Hany : Why don't we go to the Bab Zuweila minaret?

Yasser : But I can't .... the minaret.

Hany : ....?

Yasser : Because I'm .... of heights.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

My friend Ashraf is organized. His room is always tidy. He studies hard for his exams. All the students in his class like him because he is helpful. He likes spending his vacation outside. He can do some exercise, too.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ashraf is ....

a messy   b shy   c organized

2. Ashraf's .... is tidy.

a room   b classroom   c garden



3. All the ------------- like Ashraf.

a teachers   b students   c families

4- Ashraf ------------- hard for his exams.

a sleeps   b studies   c spends

5- Ashraf likes spending his vacation -------------.

a outside   b indoors   c at home

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father always comes home ------------- midnight.

a on   b in   c at

2. We can get cream from -------------

a geese   b cows   c ducks

3. If we travel to Aswan by plane, it ------------- quicker.

a was   b is   c can

4. My sister can ------------- invitations online.

a decorate   b hang   c send

5. How ------------- salt do you want in your food?

a many   b much   c little

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. my - diary - travel - It's.

----

2. have - we - left - a lot of - Do - cake?

----

3. fun - at - They - carnival - the - had.



E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Perfumes in Ancient Egypt

Activity 12

1 Read and complete:

balloons - fireworks - hung - sent

My mother's birthday was yesterday. We were busy all day. I ❶.......... up the streamers. My brother blew some ❷..... . My sister ❸.......... the invitations online. My father bought a big chocolate cake. We had a nice time and gave presents to my mother.

2 Read and match A with B:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1. She has long	a. put in your cooking?
2. Friendly people are	b. Dahab with my grandparents.
3. Which spices did you	c. black hair.
4. I went to	d. did you travel there?
	e. nice to others and helpful.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I love my town Hurghada. It's an amazing place. Tourists visit it from all over the world. There are lots of things to see and places to visit there. Tourists can dive in the sea and explore the town. There are lots of stores to buy many things.



Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hurghade is an amazing ....

ⓐ town ⓑ temple ⓒ palace ⓓ country

2. Tourists can .... in the sea.

ⓐ ride ⓑ dive ⓒ explore ⓓ visit

3. There are .... to buy things.

ⓐ beaches ⓑ parks ⓒ stores ⓓ deserts

4. .... come from all the world to visit Hurghada.

ⓐ Explorers ⓑ Tourists ⓒ Students ⓓ Archaeologists

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. celebrated - are - the world - **Birthdays** - all over.

ⓐ Birthdays celebrated are all over the world.

ⓑ Birthdays are celebrated all over the world.

ⓒ Birthdays are celebrated the world all over.

2. many - you - have - **How** - lemons - did?

ⓐ How lemons many did have you?

ⓑ How did many lemons you have?

ⓒ How many lemons did you have?

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: اختر ورتب العبارات الآتية لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

ⓐ I was happy to meet them.	1- ( )
ⓑ I was nervous and shy.	2- ( )
ⓒ My first day at school was yesterday.	3- ( )
ⓓ I met friendly students.	4- ( )





Listening Materials Unit 1 lesson 2 exercise 6,7&8

نص الاستماع الخاص بالدرس الثانى بالوحدة الأولى التمرين رقم (٦،٧،٨)



6 **Listen. Where do the friends decide to go on Saturdays?:**

استمع. أين قرر الأصدقاء أن يذهبوا يوم السبت؟





نص الاستماع

Nadine : What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

Gameela : I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

Nadine : I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

Gameela : Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

Nadine : They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a town called Asyut. Do you know it?
It's on the river Nile.

Gameela : Asyut? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

Nadine : About once a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid al-Adha too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

Gameela : I love Eid al-Adha! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks and we always eat a lot!

Nadine : That sounds great!

Gameela : What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

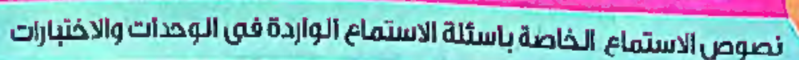
Nadine : Not really. Do you want to do something together?

Gameela : Yes, let's go to that new cafe in our neighborhood. It's near the square.

Nadine : Yes, okay. It looks nice and they've got delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

Gameela : Yes, that sounds great. I'll text you.





Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الوحدات والاختبارات

Unit 1


Lesson 1


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

I visit my grandpa every summer. He lives in the country and he has a big farm. He plants potatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce on his farm. I usually help him to harvest these crops.

Lesson 3


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

I live in a big city. There are many places to visit. There are lots of different restaurants and the food is tasty. There is a big park. I go to the park every Friday and play football with my friends. We read and borrow books at the library. We go shopping at the shopping center. I love my city.

Al-Azhar Test

- **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

My uncle is a farmer. He has a farm. He grows vegetables and fruits. I love him very much.

Activity Unit 1


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Hala lives with her family in an apartment in the city. She has two sisters. They go shopping in the city center. Hala doesn't like going to the park. On Friday, she stays at home and helps her mum.

Unit 2



Lesson 1


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Adel is a new student at El Salam Primary school. Adel's friend is Hatem. Hatem is very clever. He is good at math. Hatem shows Adel where his classroom is. Hatem stays with him at break. Hatem is very friendly.

Lesson 2


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Omar is a student in primary 6. He likes his school very much. Omar is clever. He likes math. Omar likes to play football in the playground. Omar doesn't like to play basketball.

Lesson 3


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Amr is a polite boy. He likes vegetables. Amr eats carrots. He likes fruit, too. He likes bananas very much. His father has a dog. Amr is scared of dogs.

Lessons 4 - 5


- **Listen and complete:**

Fatma likes pets. She has a pet dog. The dog has sharp claws and teeth. Fatma takes the dog for a walk every weekend. The dog is calm and quiet.

Al-Azhar Test

- **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

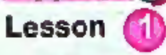
Mahmoud likes animals. Mahmoud loves cats. Cats are clean and calm animals. Cats have sharp claws and teeth. They are the best pets.

Activity Unit 2


1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Basel is in primary 6. Basel has a friend called Hazem. Basel likes his teachers very much. Basel likes Arabic too. Miss Hanan is the teacher of Arabic. Basel likes Miss Hanan. She is kind to him.

Unit 3



Lesson 1

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last vacation my friend Sherif went to Cairo. He's from Luxor. In Cairo he visited many places. First, he went to the Egyptian Museum and took photos with his camera. After that, he went on a boat and saw the Nile. It was an amazing vacation.

Lesson 3


- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Hisham and his friend Amged went to see the Pyramids in Giza. They went by taxi. At the Pyramids they saw great views. Amged walked in the desert and he wanted to climb mountains, but Hisham was afraid of heights. But he decided to face his fear. At first, Hisham's face was white, but his friend took his hand and climbed together.



Lessons 4 - 5

- **Listen and complete:**

Alexandria is my holiday destination. It's an amazing and busy city in Egypt. There are a lot of places to visit there. The beach is sandy and wonderful. There is the Alexandria Library and Quitaby Citadel. You can relax at the beach, swim in the sea and eat fish in big restaurants.

Al-Azhar Test

- **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting town in Egypt. You can do many things in the town. You can visit St Catherine's monastery, too.

Activity Unit 3

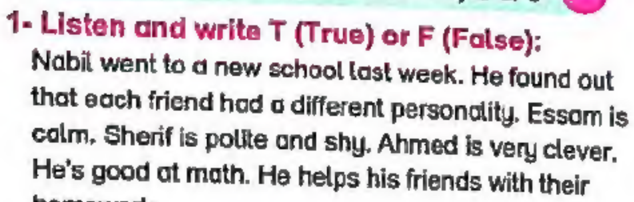
1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

We like vacations. We should plan to go to good places. We can choose the cheapest and quietest place to spend our holiday. We should think how to get to this place and the suitable time for us.

Review 1

General Activity on Units 1, 2 & 3

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):



Nabil went to a new school last week. He found out that each friend had a different personality. Essam is calm. Sherif is polite and shy. Ahmed is very clever. He's good at math. He helps his friends with their homework.



Unit 4

Lesson 1

- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Today is Eman's birthday. She is twelve years old. She is having a party with her friends. Dalida and Noha are helping her. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it too. They love her very much.

Lesson 3

- **Listen and complete:**

I'm Hossam. Last week was my friend's birthday. He had a big party and invited all his friends. I went there too. There was a big cake. My friend blew out the candles with one breath.

Al-Azhar Test

- **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

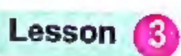
I'm Shady. On my last birthday, I got many presents from my friends and family. Everyone wished me "Happy Birthday".

Activity Unit 4

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person. It's a tradition there.

Unit 5



Lesson 3

1- Listen and complete:

Marco Polo went to many places he didn't know. He was amazed and fascinated by the world. Marco teaches us to keep an open mind. He didn't want others to be like him.

Al-Azhar Test

- **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

Today I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud.

Activity Unit 5

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Mrs. Esraa is a teacher of English. She has two children, Moamen and Toka. She likes traveling to different places with her family on vacation. Last summer, she went to Giza and visited the Pyramids and the Sphinx. She also went to Cairo and visited the Egyptian Museum.



Unit 6

Lesson 1

- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

Candles are very important. We use them everywhere to get light. Others use them to decorate their homes. Some people use candles on special occasions, like birthday parties.



Lessons 4 - 5

- Listen and complete:

Making salt dough is a simple and fun activity for people of all ages. To create salt dough, you just need three ingredients: salt, flour, and water. Salt dough can be shaped into different forms. After shaping your items, bake it in the oven at a low temperature.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

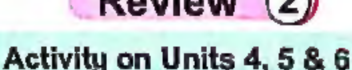
Ali lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious.

Activity Unit 6



1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

We like putting spices in our food. The spices give our food special flavors. Khan Al-Khalili is an area in Egypt. It's famous for selling all different kinds of spices. People from all the country go there to buy spices.



Review 2

Activity on Units 4, 5 & 6



1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My name is Sama. I like music. Today is my best friend's birthday. I'm going to make a new playlist on my phone. We love to listen to music.

2- Listen and complete:

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the west to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo.

General Activities



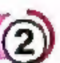
Activity 1



- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Ali. There is a garden near our house. It is dirty and dry. I asked my friends to help me. We bought all kinds of seeds and good soil. After a month, the garden became a good one.

Activity 2



- Listen and complete:

Basel is a student. He is very clever at school. He's good at math. He helps other students if they need any help with their homework! He is very helpful. All students and teachers like him.

Activity 3



- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Today is my grandmother's birthday. My sister is blowing up the balloons. My brother is hanging up the streamers and my mother is making a big cake. My father is sending invitations online to my aunts, uncles and cousins.

Activity 4



- Listen and complete:

My sister Mona is healthy. She likes sports. She plays basketball twice a day. She has a gymnastics lesson after school. She rides her bike every day and goes to the park to fly her kite.

Activity 5

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I made a salt dough yesterday at art class. I bought the ingredients from the supermarket near our school. I used salt, flour and water. I stir the mixture and took it home and put it in the oven on a low temperature.

Activity 6

- Listen and complete:

Dalia, Mona and Noha are friends. Today's Dalia's birthday. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it too. Noha is sending the email invitations.

Activity 7



- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Ali. I'm having an exam next week. I'm studying hard for it at the moment. I don't worry about exams. I go outside and do some exercise, too. It's good to relax and have fun sometimes.

Activity 8

- Listen and complete:

Aunt Samira is a kind woman. She likes all pets. She has a dog. She always feeds her pet. Aunt Samira is friendly.

Activity (9)

- Listen and complete:

Living in green cities is amazing. People want to live in good weather. Green cities help the weather to become cool and nice. We can plant lots of trees and plants in the gardens and keep these cities clean.

Al-Azhar Activity (10)

- Listen and choose:

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly.

Al-Azhar Activity (11)

- Listen and choose:

I enjoy sitting on the River Nile at night. I can see the amazing views around the river. I can go on a felucca on the river. When I ride the felucca, I can see tall buildings and big hotels.



Listening Materials on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع الخاص بدروس الصوتيات داخل الوحدات

Unit 

Lesson 

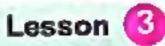
1- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. sick 2. throw 3. path
4. mouse 5. sing

2- Listen and complete the words with (s) or (th):

1. see 2. thirsty 3. stalk 4. thanks
5. bath 6. bus 7. soft 8. selfish
9. through

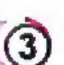
Unit (2)



Lesson (3)

4- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. hat 2. bug
3. stuck 4. ankle

Unit 

Lesson 

2- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. wet 2. whale 3. west

3- Listen. Complete the words with (v) or (w):

1. walk 2. van 3. web
4. visit 5. warm 6. vase
7. water 8. window 9. volcano

Unit (4)



Lesson (3)

3- Listen and circle the word that you hear:

1. Is this the main paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the shed.
3. I want to sail a boat!
4. Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday.
5. Hani has a pain in his foot.

